

1
2

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32

TPM Main

Part 1 Design Principles

Specification Version 1.2
Revision 116
1 March 2011
TCG Published

Contact: admin@trustedcomputinggroup.com

TCG Published

Copyright © 2003-2011 Trusted Computing Group, Incorporated

TCG

3
4



33Copyright © 2003-2011 Trusted Computing Group, Incorporated.

34**Disclaimers, Notices, and License Terms**

35THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER,
36INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR
37ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OTHERWISE ARISING OUT OF ANY
38PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

39Without limitation, TCG disclaims all liability, including liability for infringement of any
40proprietary rights, relating to use of information in this specification and to the
41implementation of this specification, and TCG disclaims all liability for cost of procurement
42of substitute goods or services, lost profits, loss of use, loss of data or any incidental,
43consequential, direct, indirect, or special damages, whether under contract, tort, warranty
44or otherwise, arising in any way out of use or reliance upon this specification or any
45information herein.

46This document is copyrighted by Trusted Computing Group (TCG), and no license, express or implied, is
47granted herein other than as follows: You may not copy or reproduce the document or distribute it to others
48without written permission from TCG, except that you may freely do so for the purposes of (a) examining or
49implementing TCG specifications or (b) developing, testing, or promoting information technology standards and
50best practices, so long as you distribute the document with these disclaimers, notices, and license terms.

51

52Contact the Trusted Computing Group at
53<http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org/> for information
54on specification licensing through membership agreements.

55Any marks and brands contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

56

57 Change History

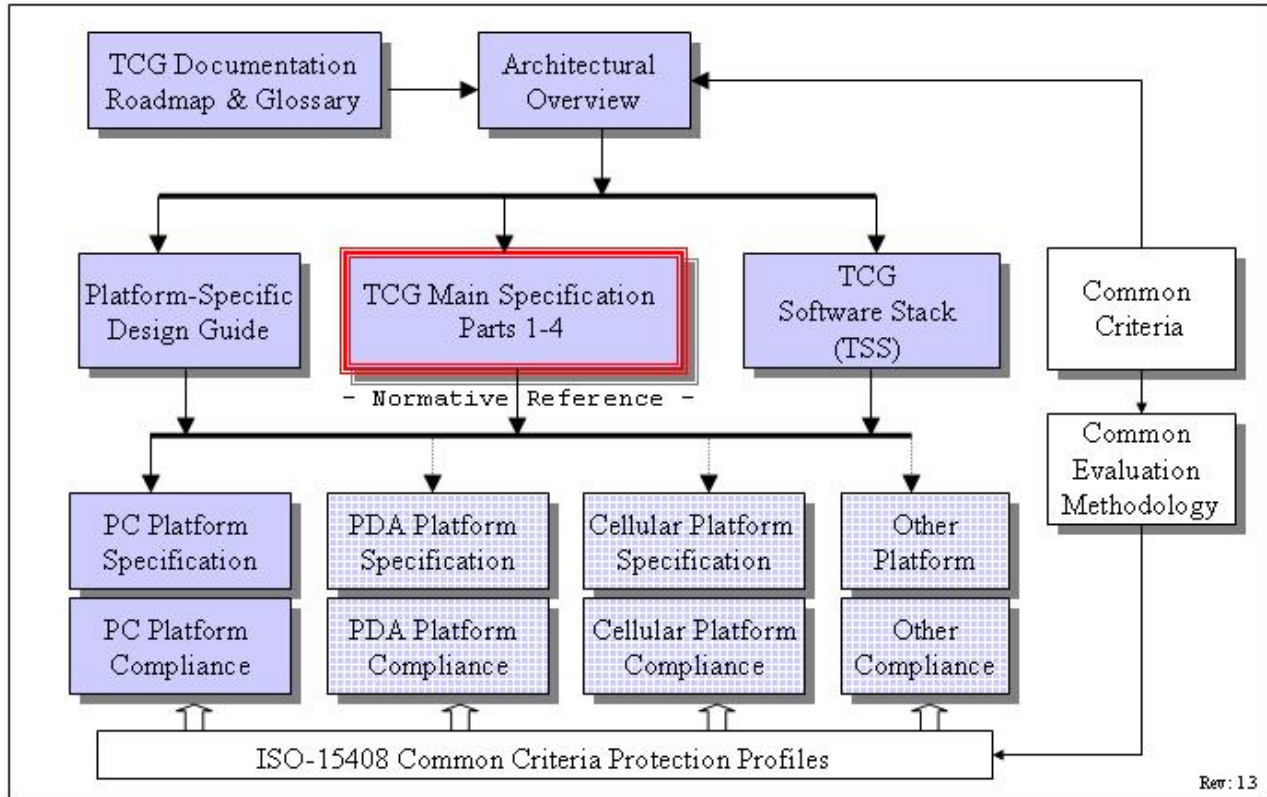
58

Version	Date	Description
Rev 50	Jun 2003	Started 30 Jun 2003 by David Grawrock First cut at the design principles
Rev 52	Jul 2003	Started 15 Jul 2003 by David Grawrock Moved
Rev 58	Aug 2003	Started 27 Aug 2003 by David Grawrock All emails through 28 August 2003 New delegation from Graeme merged
Rev 62	Oct 2003	Approved by WG, TC and Board as public release of 1.2
Rev 63	Oct 2003	Started 2 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Kerry email 7 Oct "Various items in rev62" kerry email 10 Oct "Other issues in rev 62" Changes to audit generation
Rev 64	Oct 2003	Started 12 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Removed PCRWRITE usage in the NV write commands Added locality to transport_out log Disable readpubek now set in takeownership. DisableReadpubek now deprecated, as the functionality is moot. Oshrats email regarding DSAP/OSAP sessions and the invalidation of them on delegation changes Changes for CMK commands. Oshrats email with minor 63 comments
Rev 65	Nov 2003	Action in NV_DefineSpace to ignore the Booleans in the input structure (Kerry email of 10/30 Transport changes from markus 11/6 email Set rules for encryption of parameters for OIAP, OSAP and DSAP Rewrote section on debug PCR to specify that the platform spec must indicate which register is the debug PCR Orlando FIF decisions CMK changes from Graeme
Rev 66	Nov 2003	Comment that OSAP tied to owner delegation needs to be treated internally in the TPM as a DSAP session Minor edits from Monty Added new GetCapability as requested by PC Specific WG Added new DP section that shows mandatory and optional Oshrat email of 11/27 Change PCR attributes to use locality selection instead of an array of BOOL's Removed transport sessions as something to invalidate when a resource type is flushed. Oshrat email of 12/3 added checks for NV_Locked in the NV commands Additional emails from the WG for minor editing fixes
Rev 67	Dec 2003	Made locality_modifier always a 1 size Changed NV index values to add the reserved bit. Also noticed that the previous NV index values were 10 bytes not 8. Edited them to correct size. Audit changes to ensure audit listed as optional and the previous commands properly deleted Added new OSAP authorization encryption. Changes made with new entity types, new section in DP (bottom of doc) and all command rewritten to check for the new encryption
Rev 68	Jan 2004	Added new section to identify all changes made for FIPS. Made some FIPS changes on creating and loading of keys Added change that OSAP encryption IV creation always uses both odd and even nonces Added SEALX ordinal and changes to TPM_STORED_DATA12 and seal/unseal to support this

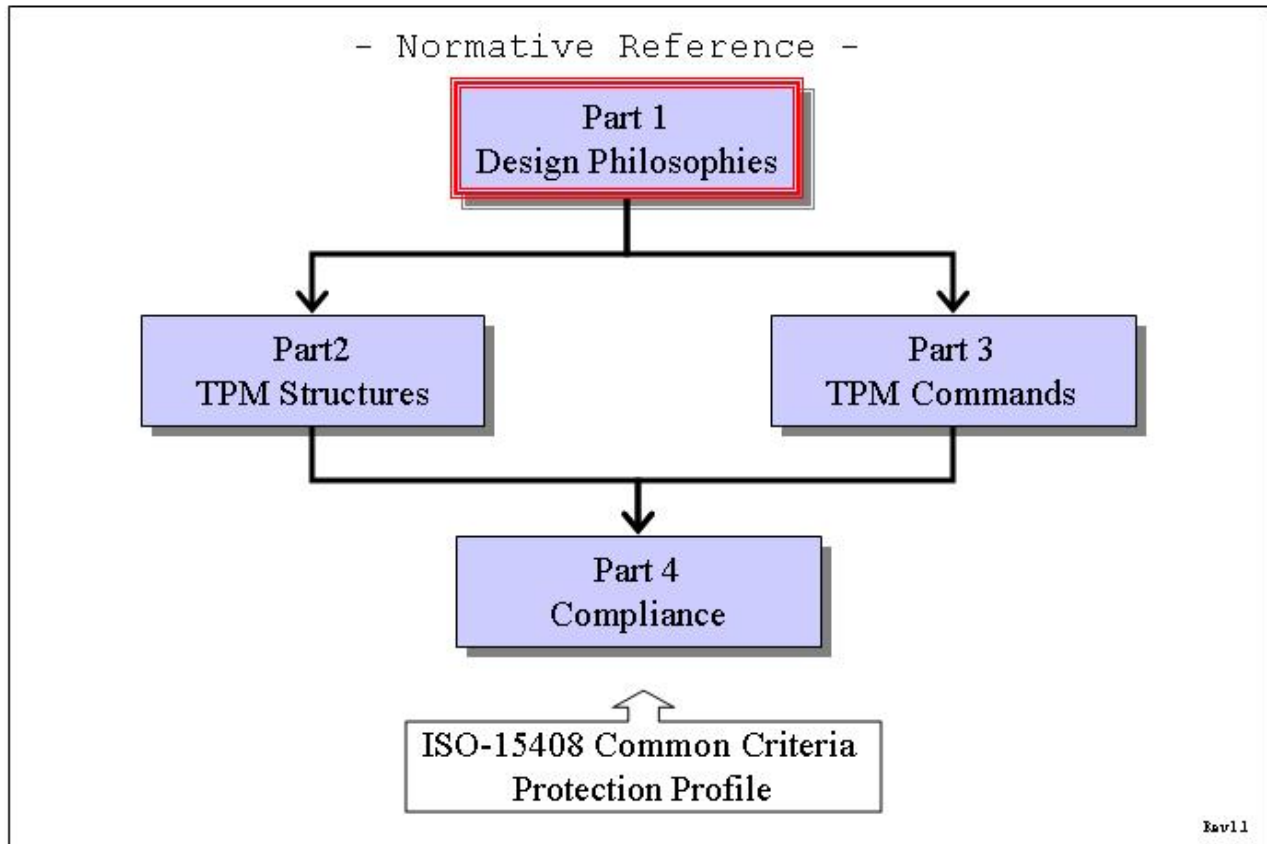
Rev 69	Feb 2004	Fixup on stored_data12. Removed magic4 from the GPIO Added in section 34 of DP further discussion of versioning and getcap DP todo section cleaned up Changed store_privkey in migrate_asymkey Moved text for getcapabilities – hopefully it is easier to read and follow through on now.
Rev 70	Mar 2004	Rewrite structure doc on PCR selection usage. New getcap to answer questions regarding TPM support for pcr selection size
Rev 71	Mar 2004	Change terms from authorization data to AuthData.
Rev 72	Mar 2004	Zimmermann's changes for DAA Added TPM_Quote2, this includes new structure and ordinal Updated key usage table to include the 1.2 commands Added security properties section that links the main spec to the conformance WG guidelines (in section 1)
Rev 73	Apr 2004	Changed CMK_MigrateKey to use TPM_KEY12 and removed two input parameters Allowed TPM_Getcapability and TPM_GetTestResult to execute prior to TPM_Startup when in failure mode
Rev 74	May 2004	Minor editing to reflect comments on web site. Locked spec and submitted for IP review
Rev 76	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG Included new SetValue command and all of the indexes to make that work
Rev 77	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG
Rev 78	Oct 2004	Comments from WG. Added new getcaps to report and query current TPM version
Rev 82	Jan 2005	All changes from emails and minutes (I think).
Rev 84	Feb 2005	Final changes for 1.2 level 2
Rev 88	Aug 2005	Eratta level 2 release candidate
Rev 91	Sept. 2005	Update to Figure 9 (b) in section 9.2 by Tasneem Brutch
Rev 100	May 2006	Clarified CTR mode
Rev 101	Aug 2006	Added deactivated rationale. Clarified number of sessions. Changed "set to NULL" to "set to zero". Added NV index D bit rationale. Added _INFO key rationale and clarified cases where _INFO keys act as _SHA1 keys.
Rev 102	Sept 2006	Minor typos only. No functional changes.
Rev 103	Oct 2006	Note that blobs encrypted in blocks must have integrity chaining. Merged two AIK sections. Self-test checks EK using encryption, not signing.
Rev 104	Nov 2006	RNG must be NIST approved in FIPS mode. When ordinal says OSAP for ADIP, it means OSAP or DSAP.
Rev 105	Feb 2007	Removed informative reference to getting signed counter values.
Rev 106	April 2007	Updated TPM_TakeOwnership state diagram and text to remove deactivated. Indicated that _INFO ordinals are examples, not a complete list.
Rev 107	July 2007	Explained that PCRs are still extended when disabled and deactivated. Removed restriction that TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair is not allowed after TPM_CreateRevokableEK or TPM_RevokeTrust.
Rev 108	Aug 2007	Field upgrade should not affect shielded locations. TPM MUST support two key slots.
Rev 109	Oct 2007	Cleaned up Opt-in physical presence wording. Changed some physical presence terms to agree with Part 2.
Rev 110	May 2008	TPM_AUTH_PRIV_USE_ONLY name change and indication that it refers to reading the public key. Warning that ADIP with a well known secret may require transport.
Rev 111	July 2008	TSC_ ordinals must be tested early. AddedMUST to self tests, but indicated that test methods are examples. Key contexts cannot be flushed. Deleted unbind payload normative to agree with part 3.
Rev 112	Jan 2009	Default exponent clarified, self-test failure cleared by TPM_Init, self-test failure must delete saved state
Rev 113	Jan 2009	No changes.
Rev 114	Jan 2009	No changes

Rev 116	Aug 2009	Audit happens at the end of the command. Audit occurs when deactivated to remove a corner case.
---------	----------	---

TCG Doc Roadmap – Main Spec



TCG Main Spec Roadmap



61

62 Table of Contents

63	1. Scope and Audience.....	1
64	1.1 Key words.....	1
65	1.2 Statement Type.....	1
66	2. Description.....	2
67	2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)	2
68	2.2 Questions.....	2
69	2.2.1 Delegation Questions.....	6
70	2.2.2 NV Questions.....	11
71	3. Protection.....	13
72	3.1 Introduction	13
73	3.2 Threat.....	14
74	3.3 Protection of functions.....	14
75	3.4 Protection of information.....	14
76	3.5 Side effects.....	15
77	3.6 Exceptions and clarifications.....	15
78	4. TPM Architecture.....	17
79	4.1 Interoperability.....	17
80	4.2 Components.....	17
81	4.2.1 Input and Output.....	18
82	4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor.....	18
83	4.2.2.1 RSA Engine.....	19
84	4.2.2.2 Signature Operations.....	19
85	4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine.....	20
86	4.2.2.4 Using Keys.....	20
87	4.2.3 Key Generation.....	21
88	4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA.....	21
89	4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation.....	21
90	4.2.4 HMAC Engine.....	21
91	4.2.5 Random Number Generator.....	22
92	4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector.....	23
93	4.2.5.2 State Register.....	24
94	4.2.5.3 Mixing Function.....	24
95	4.2.5.4 RNG Reset.....	24
96	4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine.....	25
97	4.2.7 Power Detection.....	25

38		
98	4.2.8 Opt-In.....	26
99	4.2.9 Execution Engine.....	27
100	4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory.....	28
101	4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR).....	28
102	4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR).....	28
103	5. Endorsement Key Creation.....	31
104	5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK.....	32
105	5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK.....	32
106	6. Attestation Identity Keys.....	33
107	7. TPM Ownership.....	34
108	7.1 Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage.....	34
109	8. Authentication and Authorization Data.....	35
110	8.1 Dictionary Attack Considerations.....	36
111	9. TPM Operation.....	38
112	9.1 TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow.....	39
113	9.1.1 Initialization	39
114	9.2 Self-Test Modes.....	41
115	9.2.1 Operational Self-Test.....	43
116	9.3 Startup	47
117	9.4 Operational Mode.....	47
118	9.4.1 Enabling a TPM.....	48
119	9.4.2 Activating a TPM.....	50
120	9.4.3 Taking TPM Ownership.....	51
121	9.4.3.1 Enabling Ownership.....	52
122	9.4.4 Transitioning Between Operational States	53
123	9.5 Clearing the TPM	54
124	10. Physical Presence	56
125	11. Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR).....	58
126	11.1 Platform Identity.....	58
127	11.2 RTR to Platform Binding	59
128	11.3 Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations.....	59
129	11.4 Attestation Identity Keys.....	59
130	11.4.1 AIK Creation.....	60
131	11.4.2 AIK Storage.....	61
132	12. Root of Trust for Storage (RTS).....	62
133	12.1 Loading and Unloading Blobs.....	62
134	13. Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols.....	63

135	13.1 Authorization Session Setup	66
136	13.2 Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples	67
137	13.2.1 Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)	70
138	13.2.2 Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)	74
139	13.3 Authorization Session Handles	78
140	13.4 Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)	79
141	13.5 AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP)	83
142	13.6 Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP)	84
143	14. FIPS 140 Physical Protection	85
144	14.1 TPM Profile for FIPS Certification	85
145	15. Maintenance	86
146	15.1 Field Upgrade	87
147	16. Proof of Locality	89
148	17. Monotonic Counter	90
149	18. Transport Protection	93
150	18.1 Transport encryption and authorization	95
151	18.1.1 MGF1 parameters	97
152	18.1.2 HMAC calculation	97
153	18.1.3 Transport log creation	98
154	18.1.4 Additional Encryption Mechanisms	98
155	18.2 Transport Error Handling	98
156	18.3 Exclusive Transport Sessions	99
157	18.4 Transport Audit Handling	100
158	18.4.1 Auditing of wrapped commands	100
159	19. Audit Commands	101
160	19.1 Audit Monotonic Counter	103
161	20. Design Section on Time Stamping	104
162	20.1 Tick Components	104
163	20.2 Basic Tick Stamp	105
164	20.3 Associating a TCV with UTC	105
165	20.4 Additional Comments and Questions	107
166	21. Context Management	110
167	22. Eviction	112
168	23. Session pool	113
169	24. Initialization Operations	114
170	25. HMAC digest rules	116
171	26. Generic authorization session termination rules	117

47		
172	27. PCR Grand Unification Theory	118
173	27.1 Validate Key for use	121
174	28. Non Volatile Storage	122
175	28.1 NV storage design principles	123
176	28.1.1 NV Storage use models	124
177	28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing	125
178	29. Delegation Model	127
179	29.1 Table Requirements	127
180	29.2 How this works	128
181	29.3 Family Table	130
182	29.4 Delegate Table	131
183	29.5 Delegation Administration Control	132
184	29.5.1 Control in Phase 1	133
185	29.5.2 Control in Phase 2	134
186	29.5.3 Control in Phase 3	134
187	29.6 Family Verification	134
188	29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM	136
189	29.8 Delegation Authorization Values	136
190	29.8.1 Using the authorization value	137
191	29.9 DSAP description	137
192	30. Physical Presence	141
193	30.1 Use of Physical Presence	141
194	31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption	143
195	31.1.1 TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1	143
196	31.1.2 TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15	144
197	31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CTR	144
198	31.1.4 TPM_ES_SYM_OFB	144
199	31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures	145
200	31.2.1 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1	145
201	31.2.2 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER	146
202	31.2.3 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO	146
203	31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes	146
204	32. Key Usage Table	148
205	33. Direct Anonymous Attestation	150
206	33.1 TPM_DAA_JOIN	150
207	33.2 TPM_DAA_Sign	152
208	33.3 DAA Command summary	152

209 [33.3.1 TPM setup.....](#) 153
210 [33.3.2 JOIN.....](#) 153
211 [33.3.3 SIGN.....](#) 157
212 [34. General Purpose IO.....](#) 160
213 [35. Redirection.....](#) 161
214 [36. Structure Versioning.....](#) 162
215 [37. Certified Migration Key Type.....](#) 164
216 [37.1 Certified Migration Requirements.....](#) 164
217 [37.2 Key Creation.....](#) 165
218 [37.3 Migrate CMK to a MA.....](#) 165
219 [37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA.....](#) 166
220 [38. Revoke Trust.....](#) 167
221 [39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks.....](#) 169
222 [40. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences.....](#) 172
223

224 **1. Scope and Audience**

225The TPM main specification is an industry specification that enables trust in computing
226platforms in general. The main specification is broken into parts to make the role of each
227document clear. A version of the specification (like 1.2) requires all parts to be a complete
228specification.

229A TPM designer **MUST** be aware that for a complete definition of all requirements necessary
230to build a TPM, the designer **MUST** use the appropriate platform specific specification for all
231TPM requirements.

232 **1.1 Key words**

233The key words “**MUST**,” “**MUST NOT**,” “**REQUIRED**,” “**SHALL**,” “**SHALL NOT**,” “**SHOULD**,”
234“**SHOULD NOT**,” “**RECOMMENDED**,” “**MAY**,” and “**OPTIONAL**” in the chapters 2-10
235normative statements are to be interpreted as described in [RFC-2119].

236 **1.2 Statement Type**

237Please note a very important distinction between different sections of text throughout this
238document. You will encounter two distinctive kinds of text: informative comment and
239normative statements. Because most of the text in this specification will be of the kind
240normative statements, the authors have informally defined it as the default and, as such,
241have specifically called out text of the kind informative comment They have done this by
242flagging the beginning and end of each informative comment and highlighting its text in
243gray. This means that unless text is specifically marked as of the kind informative
244comment, you can consider it of the kind normative statements.

245For example:

246 **Start of informative comment**

247This is the first paragraph of several paragraphs containing text of the kind *informative*
248*comment* ...

249This is the second paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

250This is the nth paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

251To understand the TCG specification the user must read the specification. (This use of
252**MUST** does not require any action).

253 **End of informative comment**

254This is the first paragraph of one or more paragraphs (and/or sections) containing the text
255of the kind normative statements ...

256To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of
257**MUST** indicates a keyword usage and requires an action).

258**2. Description**

259The design principles give the basic concepts of the TPM and generic information relative to
260TPM functionality.

261A TPM designer **MUST** review and implement the information in the TPM Main specification
262(parts 1-4) and review the platform specific document for the intended platform. The
263platform specific document will contain normative statements that affect the design and
264implementation of a TPM.

265A TPM designer **MUST** review and implement the requirements, including testing and
266evaluation, as set by the TCG Conformance Workgroup. The TPM **MUST** comply with the
267requirements and pass any evaluations set by the Conformance Workgroup. The TPM **MAY**
268undergo more stringent testing and evaluation.

269The question section keeps track of questions throughout the development of the
270specification and hence can have information that is no longer current or moot. The
271purpose of the questions is to track the history of various decisions in the specification to
272allow those following behind to gain some insight into the committees thinking on various
273points.

274**2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)**

275

276**2.2 Questions**

277**Start of informative comment**

278How to version the flag structures?

279 I suggest that we simply put the version into the structure and pass it back in the
280 structure. Add the version information into the persistent and volatile flag structures.

281When using the encryption transport failures are easy to see. Also the watcher on the line
282can tell where the error occurred. If the failure occurs at the transport level the response is
283an error (small packet) and it is in the clear. If the error occurs during execution of the
284command then the response is a small encrypted packet. Should we expand the packet size
285or simply let this go through?

286 Not an issue.

287Do we restrict the loading of a counter to once per TPM_Startup(Clear)?

288 Yes once a counter is set it must remain the same until the next successful startup.

289Does the time stamp work as a change on the tag or as a wrapped command like the
290transport protection.

291 While possibly easier at the HW level the tag mechanism seems to be harder at the SW
292 level as to what commands are sent to the TPM. The issue of how the SW presents the
293 TS session to the SW writer is not an issue. This is due to the fact that however the
294 session is presented to the SW writer the writer must take into account which
295 commands are being time stamped and how to manage the log etc. So accepting a
296 mechanism that is easy for the HW developer and having the SW manage the interface is
297 a sufficient direction.

65
298When returning time information do we return the entire time structure or just the time
299and have the caller obtain all the information with a GetCap call?
300 All time returns will use the entire structure with all the details.
301Do we want to return a real clock value or a value with some additional bits (like a
302monotonic value with a time value)?
303 Add a count value into the time structure.
304Do we need NTP or is SNTP sufficient?
305 The TPM will not run the time protocol itself. What the TPM will do is accept a value
306 from outside software and a hash of the protocols that produced the value. This allows
307 the platform to use whatever they want to set the value from secure time to the local PC
308 clock.
309Can an owner destroy a TPM by issuing repeated CreateCounter commands?
310 A TPM may place a throttle on this command to avoid burn issues. It MUST not be
311 possible to burn out the TPM counter under normal operating conditions. The
312 CreateCounter command is limited to only once per successful
313 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
314 This answer is now somewhat moot as the command to createcounter is now owner
315 authorized. This allows the owner to decide when to authorize the counter creation. As
316 there are only 4 counters available it is not an issue with having the owner continue to
317 authorize counters.
318What happens to a transport session (log etc.) on an S3?
319 Should these be the same as the authorization sessions? The saving of a transport
320 session across S3 is not a security concern but is a memory concern. The TPM MUST
321 clear the transport session on TPM_Startup(CLEAR) and MAY clear the session on
322 TPM_Startup(any).
323While you can't increment or create a new counter after startup can you read a counter
324other than the active one?
325 You may read other counters
326When we audit a command that is not authorized should we hash the parameters and
327provide that as part of the audit event, currently they are set to null.
328 We should hash parameters of non-authorized commands
329There is a fundamental problem with the encryption of commands in the transport and
330auditing. If we cover a command we have no way to audit, if we show the command then it
331isn't protected. Can we expose the command (ordinal) and not the parameters?
332 If the owner has requested that a function be audited then the execute transport return
333 will include sufficient information to produce the audit entry.
334How to set the time in the audit structure and tell the log what is going on.
335 The time in the audit structure is set to nulls except when audit occurs as part of a
336 transport session. In that case the audit command is set from the time value in the TPM.
337Is there a limit to the number of locality modifiers?

338 Yes, the TPM need only support a maximum of 4 modifiers. The definition of the
339 modifiers is always a platform specific issue.

340 How do we evict various resources?

341 There are numerous eviction routines in the current spec. We will deprecate the various
342 types and move to TPM_Flushxxx for all resource types.

343 Can you flush a saved context?

344 Yes, you must be able to invalidate saved contexts. This would be done by making sure
345 that the TPM could not load any saved context.

346 What is the value of maintaining the clock value when the time is not incrementing? Can
347 this be due to the fact that the time is now known to be at least after the indicated time?

348 Moot point now as we don't keep the clock value at

349 Should we change the current structures and add the tag?

350 TODO

351 Can we have a bank of bits (change bit locality) for each of the 4 levels of locality?

352 Now

353 How do we find out what sessions are active? Do we care?

354 I would say yes we care and we should use the same mechanism that we do for the keys.
355 A GetCap that will return the handles.

356 Can we limit the transport sessions to only one?

357 No, we should have as a minimum 2 sessions. One gets into deadlocks and such so the
358 minimum should be 2.

359 Changed: The deadlock is with authorization sessions, not transport.

360 Does the TPM need to keep the audit structure or can it simply keep a hash?

361 The TPM just keeps the audit digest and no other information.

362 What happens to an OSAP session if the key associated with it is taken off chip with a
363 "SaveContext"? What happens if the key saveContext occurs after an OSAP auth context
364 that is already off chip? How do you later connect the key to the auth session (without
365 having to store all sorts of things on chip)? Are we really honestly convinced that we've
366 thought of all the possible ramifications of saving and restoring auth sessions? And is it
367 really true that all the things we say about a saved auth session do/should apply to a saved
368 key (which is to say is there really a single loadContext command and a single context
369 structure)?

370 Saved context a reliable indication of the linkage between the OSAP and the key. When
371 saving save auth then key, on load key then auth. Auth session checks for the key and if
372 not found fails.

373 Why is addNonce an output of 16.5 loadContext?

374 If it's wrong, it's a little late to find out now - why not have it as an input and have the
375 TPM return an error if the encrypted addNonce doesn't match the input? The thought
376 was that the nonce area might not be a nonce but was information that the caller could

74
377 put in. If they use it as a nonce fine, but they could also use it as a label or sequence
378 number or ... any value the caller wanted
379Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceSession?
380 contextNonceSession does not have to be saved across S3 states so there is no
381 endurance problem.
382Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceKey?
383 contextNonceKey only changes on TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) so it's endurance is the same
384 as a PCR.
385The debate continues about restoring a resource's handle during TPM_LoadContext.
386 Debate ends by having the load context be informed of what the loaders opinion is about
387 the handle. The requestor can indicate that it wishes the same handle and if the TPM
388 can perform that task it does, if it cannot then the load fails.
389Interesting attack is now available with the new audit close flag on get audit signed. Anyone
390with access to a signing key can close the audit log. The only requirement on the command
391is that the key be authorized. While there is no loss of information (as the attacker can
392always destroy the external log) does the closing of a log make things look different. This
393does enable a burn out attack. The ability to closeAudit enables a new DenialOfService
394attack.
395 Resolution: The TPM Owner owns the audit process, so the TPM Owner should have
396 exclusive control over closeAudit. Hence the signing key used to closeAudit must be an
397 AIK. Note that the owner can choose to give this AIK's AuthData value to the OS, so that
398 the OS can automatically close an audit session during platform power down. But such
399 operations are outside this specification.
400Should we keep the E function in the tick counter?
401 From Graeme, I would prefer to see these calculations deleted. The calculation starts
402 with one assertion and derives a contradictory assertion. Generally, there seems little
403 value in trying to derive an equality relationship when nothing is known about the path
404 to and from the Time Authority.
405What is the difference between DIR_Quote and DirReadSigned?
406 Appears to be none so DIR_Quote deleted
407The tickRate parameter associates tick with seconds and has no way to indicate that the
408rate is greater than one second. Is this OK?
409 Do we need to allow for tick rates that are slower than once per second. We report in
410 nanoseconds.
411The TPM MUST support a minimum of 2 authorization sessions. Where do we put this
412requirement in the spec?
413Can we find a use for the DIR and BIT areas for locality 0?
414 They have no protections so in many ways they are just extra. We leave this as it is as
415 locality 0 may mean something else on a platform other than a PC.
416How do we send back the transport log information on each execute transport?

417 It is 64 bytes in length and would make things very difficult to include on every
418 command. Change wrappedaudit to be input params, add output params and the caller
419 has all information necessary to create the structure to add into the digest.

420The transport log structure is a single structure used both for input and output with the
421only difference being the setting of ticks to 0 on input and a real value on output, do we
422need two structures.

423 I believe that a single structure is fine

424For TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) I added that all keys would be flushed. Is this right?

425 Yes

426Why have 2 auths for release transport signed? It is an easy attack to simply kill the
427session.

428 The reason is that an attacker can close the session and get a signature of the session
429 log. We are currently not sure of the level of this attack but by having the creator of the
430 session authorize the signing of the log it is completely avoided.

43119.3 Action 3 (startup/state) doesn't reference the situation where there is no saved state.
432My presumption is that you can still run startup/clear, but maybe you have to do a
433hardware reset?

434 DWG I don't think so. This could be an attack and a way to get the wrong PCR values
435 into the system. The BIOS is taking one path and may not set PCR values. Hence the
436 response is to go into failed selftest mode.

437What happens to a transport session if a command clears the TPM like revokeTrust

438 This is fine. The transport session is not complete but the session protected the
439 information till the command that changed the TPM. It is impossible to get a log from
440 the session or to sign the session but that is what the caller wanted.

441**End of informative comment**

442**2.2.1 Delegation Questions**

443**Start of informative comment**

444Is loading the table by untrusted process ok? Does this cause a problem when the new table
445is loaded and permissions change?

446 Yes, the fill table can be done by any process. A TPM Owner wishing to validate the table
447 can perform the operations necessary to gain assurance of the table entries.

448Are the permissions for a table row sensitive?

449 Currently we believe not but there are some attack models that knowing the permissions
450 makes the start of the attack easier. It does not make the success of the attack any
451 easier. Example if I know that a single process is the only process in the table that has
452 the CreateAIK capability then the attacker only attempts to break into the single process
453 and not all others.

454What software is in use to modify the table?

83
455 The table can be updated by any software or process given the capability to manage the
456 table. Three likely sources of the software would be a BIOS process, an applet of a
457 trusted process and a standalone self-booting (from CD-ROM) management application.

458Who holds the TPM Owner password?

459 There is no change to the holding of the TPM Owner token. The permissions do allow the
460 creation of an application that sets the TPM Owner token to a random value and then
461 seals the value to the application.

462How are these changes created such that there is minimal change to the current TPM?

463 This works by using the current authorization process and only making changes in the
464 authorization and not for each and every command.

465What about S3 and other events?

466 Permissions, once granted, are non-volatile.

467The permission bit to changeOwnerAuth (bit 11) gives rise to the functionality that the SW
468that has this bit can control the TPM completely. This includes removing control from the
469TPM Owner as the TPM Owner value will now be a random value only known to SW. There
470are use models where this is good and bad, do we want this functionality?

471Pros and cons of physical enable table when TPM Owner is present – Pro physically present
472user can make SW play fair. Con – physically present user can override the desires of a TPM
473Owner.

474Do we need to reset TPM_PERMISSION_KEY at some time?

475 We know that the key is NOT reset on TPM_ClearOwner.

476What is the meaning of using permission table in an OIAP and OSAP mode?

477 Delegate table can be used in either OIAP or OSAP mode.

478Can you grant permissions without assigning the permissions to a specific process?

479 Yes, do a SetRow with a PCR_SELECTION of null and the permissions are available to
480 any process.

481Do we need a ClearTableOwner?

482 I would assert that we do not need this command. The TPM Owner can perform SetRow
483 with NULLS four times and creates the exact same thing. Not having this command
484 lowers the number of ordinals the TPM is required to support.

485There are some issues with the currently defined behavior of familyID and the
486verificationCount.

487 Talked to David for 30 mins. We decided that maxFamilyID is set to zero at
488 manufacture, and incremented for every FamTable_SetRow

489 It is the responsibility of DelTable_SetRow to set the appropriate familyID

490 DelTable_SetRow fails if the provided familyID is not active and present somewhere in
491 the FamTable

492 FillTable works differently. It effectively resets the family table (invalidating all active
493 rows) and sets up as many rows as are needed based on the number of families specified
494 in FillTable

495 This still needs a bit of work. Presumably the caller of FillTable uses a “fake” familyID,
496 and this is changed to the actual familyID when the fill happens

497 There are some issues with the verificationCount.

498 Uber-issue. If none of the rows in the table are allowed to create other rows and export
499 them, then the “sign” of the table is meaningful

500 If one of the rows is allowed to create and export new rows, is there any real meaning to
501 “the current set of exported rows?” (i.e. SW can just up and make new rows).

502 Should section 4.4, TPM_DelTable_ClearTable), section 4.5 (TPM_DelTable_SetEnable), and
503 section 4.7 (TPM_DelTable_Set_Admin) all say “there must be UNAMBIGUOUS evidence of
504 the presence of physical access...” Is this okay?

505 Answer: No, group agreed to change UNAMBIGUOUS to BEST EFFORT in all three
506 sections.

507 Is FamilyID a sensitive value?

508 If so, why? Agreement: FamilyID is not a sensitive value.

509 Should TPM_TakeOwnership be included in permissions bits (see bit 12 in section 3.1)?

510 Enables a better administrative monitor and may enable user to take ownership easier.
511 Agreement leave it in and change informative comments to reflect the reasons.

512 [From the TPM_DelTable_SetRow command informative comments]: Note that there are two
513 types of rights: family rights (you can either edit your family’s rows or grab new rows) and
514 administrative rights.

515 This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be resolved.

516 [From the TPM_DelTable_ExportRow command informational comments]:

517 Does not effect content of exported row left behind in the table;

518 Valid for all rows in the table;

519 Does not need to be OwnerAuth’d;

520 Family Rights are that family can only export a row from rows 0-3 if row belongs to the
521 family, but rows 4 and upwards can be exported by any Trusted Process, without any
522 family checking being done. This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be
523 resolved.

524 When a Family Table row is set, the verificationCount is set to 1, make sure that is
525 consistently used in all other command actions.

526 Done.

527 SetEnable and SetEnableOwner enable and disable all rows in a table, not just the rows
528 belong to the family of the process that used the SetEnable and/or SetEnableOwner
529 commands. This is also true for SetAdmin and SetAdminOwner. Can anybody come up with
530 a use scenario where that causes any problems?

531 In command actions where the TPM must walk the delegation table looking for a
532 configuration that matches the command input parameters (PCRinfo and/or authValues)
533 and there are rows in the table with duplicate values, what does the TPM do? Is there any

92
534reason not to use the rule “the TPM starts walking the table starting with the first row and
535use the first row it finds with matching values”?

536 Answer to this question may mean change to pseudo code in section 2.3, Using the
537 AuthData Value, which currently shows the TPM walking the delegation table, starting
538 with the first row, and using the first row it finds with matching values.

539What familyID value signals a family table row that is not in use/contains invalid values?

540 To get consistency in all the command Actions that use this, that FamilyID value has
541 been edited in all places to be NULL, instead of 0. Yes, FamilyID value of NULL signals a
542 family table row that is not in use or contains invalid values.

543From section 2.4, Delegate Table Fill and Enablement: “The changing of a TPM Owner does
544not automatically clear the delegate table. Changing a TPM Owner does disable all current
545delegations, including exported rows, and requires the new TPM Owner to re-enable the
546delegations in the table. The table entry values like trusted process identification and
547delegations to that process are not effected by a change in owner. THE AUTHDATA VALUES
548DO NOT SURVIVE THE OWNERSHIP CHANGE.” Question: If this is true, no delegations
549work after a change of owner. How does the new owner set new AuthData values?

550 The simple way of handling this is to get AdminMonitor to own backing up delegations at
551 first owner install and then be run by new owner, and AdminMonitor uses FillTable, to
552 handle “Owner migration.” Or, for another use option, is for second owner to pick-up
553 PCR-ID’s and delegations bits from previous owner – what is the most straight-forward
554 way to do this?

555In section 3.1 (Delegate Definitions bit map table), several commands that do not require
556owner authorization are in the table and can be delegated: TPM_SetTempDeactivated (bit
55715), TPM_ReadPubek (bit 7), and TPM_LoadManuMaintPub (bit 3), Why?

558In section 3.3 it is stated, “The Family ID resets to NULL on each change of TPM Owner.”
559This invalidates all delegations. Is this what we want?

560 You don’t have to blow away FamilyID to blow away the blobs, because key is gone. So
561 this is not required – can eliminate these actions.

562In section 3.12, why is TPM_DELEGATE_LABEL included in the table?

563In section 4.2 (TPM_DelTable_FillTable), is it okay to delete requirement that delegate table
564be empty? Also, in Action 14, now that we have both persistent and volatile tableAdmin
565flags, should this command set volatile tableAdmin flag to FALSE upon completion?

566 The delegate table does not need to be empty to use the TPM_DelTable_FillTable
567 command, Also, a paragraph has been added to Informative comment for
568 TPM_DelTable_FillTable that points out usefulness of immediately following
569 TPM_DelTable_FillTable with TPM_Delegate_TempSetAdmin, to stop table administration
570 in the current boot cycle.

571In section 4.15 (TPM_FamTable_IncrementCount), why does this command require
572TPMOwner authorization, as currently documented in section 4.15?

573 IncrementCount is gated by tableAdmin, which seems sufficient, and use of ownerauth
574 makes it difficult to automatically verify a table using a CDROM.

575In section 4.3 (TPM_DelTable_FillTableOwner), in the Action 3d, use OTP[80] = MFG(x1) in
576place of oneTimePad[n] = SHA1(x1 || seed[n]))?,

577 yes.

578 In section 4.9 (TPM_DelTable_SetRow), is invalidateRow input parameter really needed?

579 It is only used in action 5. Couldn't action 5 simply read "Set N1 -> familyID = NULL"?

580 There is no easy way to generate a blob that can be used to delegate migration authority for
581 a user key.

582 This is because the TPM does not store the migration authority on the chip as the
583 migration command involves an encrypted key, not a loaded one. One could invent a
584 'CreateMigrationDelegationBlob' that took the encrypted key as input and generated the
585 encrypted delegation blob as output, but it would not be pretty. Sorry Dave.

586 If a delegate row in NV memory (nominally 4 rows) is to refer to a user key (instead of owner
587 auth), then it needs to include a hash of the public key. It could be that the NV table is
588 restricted to owner auth delegations, this would save 80 bytes of NV store and also simplify
589 the LoadBlob command.

590 Maybe would simplify other things. I would definitely NOT permit user keys in the table
591 to be run with the legacy OSAP and OIAP ordinals.

592 A few more GetCapability values are also required, the usual constants that we discussed
593 and also the two readTable caps.

594 TBD Verify that Delegate Table Management commands (see section 2.8) cover all the
595 functionality of obsolete or updated commands.

596 Redefine bits 16 and above in Delegation Definitions table (section 3.1). In particular, can
597 new command set (with TPM_FAMILY_OPERATION options as defined in section 3.20) be
598 delegated individually and appropriately. Also, how many user key authorized commands
599 will be delegated?

600 Is new TPM_FAMILY_FLAGS field of family table (defined in section 3.5) sensitive data?

601 DSAP informative comment needs to be completed (section 4.1). In particular, does the
602 statement "The DSAP command works like OSAP except it takes an encrypted blob – an
603 encrypted delegate table row -- as input" sufficient? Or do some particular differences
604 between DSAP and OSAP have to be pointed out in this informative comment??

605 The TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands cannot be used to load key delegation blobs
606 into the TPM. Is another ordinal required to do that?

607 Is it okay for TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands to ignore enable/disable
608 use/admin flags in family table rows?

609 Is it wise to delegate TPM_DelTable_ConvertBlob command (defined in section 4.11)? Does
610 current definition of this command support section 2.7 scenarios?

611 Is there a privacy problem with DelTable_ReadRow since the contents may not be identical
612 from TPM to TPM?

613 Are DSAP sessions being pooled with the other sessions? if so, can one save/load them by
614 context functions? if not, then there should be a restriction in saveContext.

615 DSAP are "normal" authorization sessions and would save/load with OIAP and OSAP
616 sessions

617 **End of informative comment**

101

6182.2.2 NV Questions

619Start of informative comment

620You would set this by using a new ordinal that is unauthorized and only turns the flag on to
621lock everything. Yet another ordinal? Do we need it? Is this an important functionality for
622the uses we see?

623 Yes this allows us to have "close" to write once functionality. What the functionality
624 would be is that the RTM would assure that the proper information is present in the
625 TPM and then "lock" the area. One could create this functionality by having the RTM
626 change the authorization each time but then you would need to eat more NV store so
627 save the sealed AuthData value. I think that is easier to have an ordinal than eat the NV
628 space and require a much more complex programming model.

629Is it OK to have an element partially written?

630 Given that we have chunks there has to be a mechanism to allow partial writes.

631If an element is partially written, how does a caller know that more needs to be written?

632 I would say the use model that provides the ability to write – read, in a loop is just not
633 supported. Get it all written and then do the read.

634Usage of the lock bit: as you wrote, the RTM would assure that the proper information is
635present in the TPM and then "lock" the area. so why in action #4 we should also check
636bWritten when the lock bit is set? should be as action #3b of TPM_NV_DefineSpace, if lock
637is set - return error

638 [Grawrock, David] Not quite, the use model I was trying to create was the one where the
639 TPM was locked and the user was attempting to add a new area. If the locked bit doesn't
640 allow for writing once to a new area, one must reboot to perform the write and also tell
641 the RTM what the value to write must be. So this allows the creator of an area to write it
642 once and then it flows with the locked bit.

643Can you delete a NV value with only physical presence?

644 [Grawrock, David] You can't delete with physical presence, you must use owner
645 authorization. This I think is a reasonable restriction to avoid burn problems.

646Why is there no check on the writes for a TPM Owner?

647 The check for an owner occurred during the TPM_NV_DefineSpace. It is imperative that
648 the TPM_NV_DefineSpace set in place the appropriate restrictions to limit the potential
649 for attacks on the NV storage area.

650Description of maxNVBufSize is confusing to me. Why is this value related to the input size?
651And since there is no longer any 'written' bits, why is there a maximum area size at all?

652 [Grawrock, David] This is a fixed size and set by the TPM manufacturer. I would see
653 values like the input buffer, transport sessions etc all coming up with the max size the
654 TPM can handle. This does NOT indicate what is available on the TPM right now. The
655 TPM could have 4k of space but max size would be 782 and would always report that
656 number. If the available space fell to 20 bytes this value would still be 782.

657If the storage area is an opaque area to the TPM (as described), then how does the TPM
658know what PCR registers have been used to seal a blob?

659 The VALUES of the area are opaque, the attributes to control access are not. So if the
660 attributes indicate that PCR restrictions are in place the TPM keeps those PCR values as
661 part of the index attributes. This in reality seals the value as there is no need for
662 tpmProof since the value never leaves the TPM.

663 **End of informative comment**

664**3. Protection**

665**3.1 Introduction**

666**Start of informative comment**

667The Protection Profile in the Conformance part of the specification defines the threats that
668are resisted by a platform. This section, “Protection,” describes the properties of selected
669capabilities and selected data locations within a TPM that has a Protection Profile and has
670not been modified by physical means.

671This section introduces the concept of protected capabilities and the concept of shielded
672locations for data. The ordinal set defined in part II and III is the set of protected
673capabilities. The data structures in part II define the shielded locations.

674• A protected capability is one whose correct operation is necessary in order for the
675operation of the TCG Subsystem to be trusted.

676• A shielded location is an area where data is protected against interference and prying,
677independent of its form.

678This specification uses the concept of protected capabilities so as to distinguish platform
679capabilities that must be trustworthy. Trust in the TPM depends critically on the protected
680capabilities. Platform capabilities that are not protected capabilities must (of course) work
681properly if the TCG Subsystem is to function properly.

682This specification uses the concept of shielded locations, rather than the concept of
683“shielded data.” While the concept of shielded data is intuitive, it is extraordinarily difficult
684to define because of the imprecise meaning of the word “data.” For example, consider data
685that is produced in a safe location and then moved into ordinary storage. It is the same data
686in both locations, but in one it is shielded data and in the other it is not. Also, data may not
687always exist in the same form. For example, it may exist as vulnerable plaintext, but also
688may sometimes be transformed into a logically protected form. This data continues to exist,
689but doesn't always need to be shielded data - the vulnerable form needs to be shielded data,
690but the logically protected form does not. If a specific form of data requires protection
691against interference or prying, it is therefore necessary to say “if the data-D exists, it must
692exist only in a shielded location.” A more concise expression is “the data-D must be extant
693only in a shielded location.”

694Hence, if trust in the TCG Subsystem depends critically on access to certain data, that data
695should be extant only in a shielded location and accessible only to protected capabilities.
696When not in use, such data could be erased after conversion (using a protected capability)
697into another data structure. Unless the other data structure was defined as one that must
698be held in a shielded location, it need not be held in a shielded location.

699**End of informative comment**

7001. The data structures described in part II of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be
701 instantiated in a TPM, except as data in TPM-shielded-locations.

7022. The ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be
703 instantiated in a TPM, except as TPM-protected-capabilities.

7043. Functions MUST NOT be instantiated in a TPM as TPM-protected-capabilities if they do
705 not appear in the ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications.

706 **3.2 Threat**

707 **Start of informative comment**

708 This section, “Threat,” defines the scope of the threats that must be considered when
709 considering whether a platform facilitates subversion of capabilities and data in a platform.

710 The design and implementation of a platform determines the extent to which the platform
711 facilitates subversion of capabilities and data within that platform. It is necessary to define
712 the attacks that must be resisted by TPM-shielded locations and TPM-protected capabilities
713 in that platform.

714 The TCG specifications define all attacks that are resisted by the TPM. These attacks must
715 be considered when determining whether the integrity of TPM-protected capabilities and
716 data in TPM-shielded locations can be damaged. These attacks must be considered when
717 determining whether there is a backdoor method of obtaining access to TPM-protected
718 capabilities and data in TPM-shielded locations. These attacks must be considered when
719 determining whether TPM-protected capabilities have undesirable side effects.

720 **End of informative comment**

721 1. For the purposes of the “Protection” section of the specification, the threats that MUST
722 be considered when determining whether the TPM facilitates subversion of TPM-
723 protected-capabilities or data in TPM-shielded-locations SHALL include

724 a. The methods inherent in physical attacks that fail if the TPM complies with the
725 “physical protection” requirements specified by TCG

726 b. All methods that require execution of instructions in a computing engine in the
727 platform

728 **3.3 Protection of functions**

729 **Start of informative comment**

730 A TPM-protected-capability must be used to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Other
731 methods must not be allowed to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Otherwise, the integrity
732 of TPM-protected capabilities is unknown.

733 **End of informative comment**

734 1. A TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the alteration of TPM-protected-capabilities, except by TPM-
735 protected capabilities.

736 **3.4 Protection of information**

737 **Start of informative comment**

738 TPM-protected capabilities must provide the only means from outside the TPM to access
739 information represented by data in TPM-shielded-locations. Otherwise, a rogue can reveal
740 data in TPM-shielded-locations, or create a derivative of data from TPM-shielded-locations
741 (in a way that maintains some or all of the information content of the data) and reveal the
742 derivative.

743End of informative comment

7441. A TPM SHALL NOT export data that is dependent upon data structures described in part
745 II of the TPM specifications, other than via a TPM-Protected-Capability.

7463.5 Side effects**747Start of informative comment**

748An implementation of a TPM-protected capability must not disclose the contents of TPM-
749shielded locations. The only exceptions are when such disclosure is inherent in the
750definition of the capability or in the methods used by the capability. For example, a
751capability might be designed specifically to reveal hidden data or might use cryptography
752and hence always be vulnerable to cryptanalysis. In such cases, some disclosure or risk of
753disclosure is inherent and cannot be avoided. Other forms of disclosure (by side effects, for
754example) must always be avoided.

755End of informative comment

7561. The implementation of a TPM-protected-capability in a TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the
757 disclosure or the exposure of information represented by data in TPM-shielded-
758 locations, except by means unavoidably inherent in the TPM definition.

7593.6 Exceptions and clarifications**760Start of informative comment**

761These exceptions to the blanket statements in the generic “protection” requirements (above)
762are fully compatible with the intended effect of those statements. These exceptions affect
763TCG-data that is available as plain-text outside the TPM and TCG-data that can be used
764without violating security or privacy. These exceptions are valuable because they approve
765use of TPM resources by vendor-specific commands in particular circumstances.

766These clarifications to the blanket statements of the generic “protection” requirements
767(above) do not materially change the effect of those statements, but serve to approve specific
768legitimate interpretations of the requirements.

769End of informative comment

7701. A Shielded Location is a place (memory, register, etc.) where data is protected against
771 interference and exposure, independent of its form

7722. A TPM-Protected-Capability is an operation defined in and restricted to those identified
773 in part II and III of the TPM specifications.

7743. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use the standard TCG owner/operator
775 authorization mechanism

7764. A vendor specific command or capability MAY utilize a TPM_PUBKEY structure stored on
777 the TPM so long as the usage of that TPM_PUBKEY structure is authorized using the
778 standard TCG authorization mechanism.

7795. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use a sequence of standard TCG
780 commands. The command MUST propagate the locality used for the call to the used
781 TCG commands or capabilities, or set locality to 0.

7826. A vendor specific command or capability that takes advantage of exceptions and
783 clarifications to the “protection” requirements MUST be defined as part of the security
784 target of the TPM. Such a vendor specific command or capability MUST be evaluated to
785 meet the Platform Specific TPM and System Security Targets.
7867. If a TPM employs vendor-specific cipher-text that is protected against subversion to the
787 same or greater extent as internal TPM-resources stored outside the TPM with TCG-
788 defined methods, that vendor-specific cipher-text does not necessarily require protection
789 from physical attack. If a TPM location stores only vendor-specific cipher-text that does
790 not require protection from physical attack, that location can be ignored when
791 determining whether the TPM complies with the "physical protection" requirements
792 specified by TCG.

793 4. TPM Architecture

794 4.1 Interoperability

795 Start of informative comment

796 The TPM must support a minimum set of algorithms and operations to meet TCG
797 specifications.

798 Algorithms

799 RSA, SHA-1, HMAC

800 The algorithms and protocols are the minimum that the TPM must support. Additional
801 algorithms and protocols may be available to the TPM. All algorithms and protocols
802 available in the TPM must be included in the TPM and platform credential.

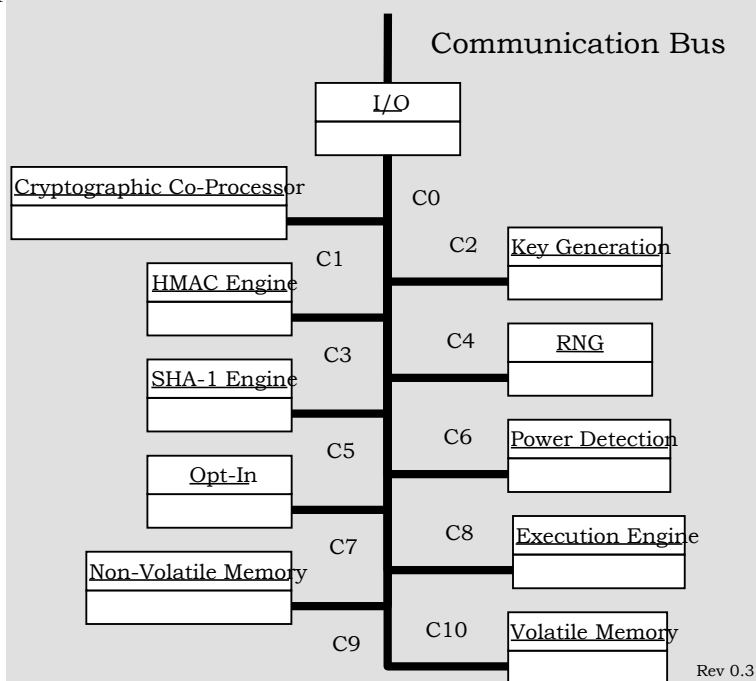
803 The reason to specify these algorithms is two fold. The first is to know and understand the
804 security properties of selected algorithms; identify appropriate key sizes and ensure
805 appropriate use in protocols. The second reason is to define a base level of algorithms for
806 interoperability.

807 End of informative comment

808 4.2 Components

809 Start of informative comment

810 The following is a block diagram Figure 4:a shows the major components of a TPM.
811



812 Figure 4:a - TPM Component Architecture

813 **End of informative comment**

814 **4.2.1 Input and Output**

815 **Start of informative comment**

816 The I/O component, Figure 4:a C0, manages information flow over the communications
817 bus. It performs protocol encoding/decoding suitable for communication over external and
818 internal buses. It routes messages to appropriate components. The I/O component enforces
819 access policies associated with the Opt-In component as well as other TPM functions
820 requiring access control.

821 The main specification does not require a specific I/O bus. Issues around a particular I/O
822 bus are the purview of a platform specific specification.

823 **End of informative comment**

- 824 1. The number of incoming operand parameter bytes must exactly match the
825 requirements of the command ordinal. If the command contains more or fewer bytes
826 than required, the TPM MUST return TPM_BAD_PARAMETER.

827 **4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor**

828 **Start of informative comment**

829 The cryptographic co-processor, Figure 4:a C1, implements cryptographic operations within
830 the TPM. The TPM employs conventional cryptographic operations in conventional ways.
831 Those operations include the following:

832 Asymmetric key generation (RSA)

833 Asymmetric encryption/decryption (RSA)

834 Hashing (SHA-1)

835 Random number generation (RNG)

836 The TPM uses these capabilities to perform generation of random data, generation of
837 asymmetric keys, signing and confidentiality of stored data.

838 The TPM may symmetric encryption for internal TPM use but does not expose any
839 symmetric algorithm functions to general users of the TPM.

840 The TPM may implement additional asymmetric algorithms. TPM devices that implement
841 different algorithms may have different algorithms perform the signing and wrapping.

842 If the TPM uses RSA with the required key length (2048 bits for storage keys), the output of
843 all commands for key or data blob generation (e.g., TPM_CreateWrapKey, TPM_Seal,
844 TPM_Sealx, TPM_MakeIdentity) consists of only one block. However, if the TPM uses other
845 asymmetric algorithms that result in more than one output block for these commands, the
846 integrity of the blobs must be protected by the TPM (by means of appropriate chaining
847 mechanisms).

848 **End of informative comment**

- 849 1. The TPM MAY implement other asymmetric algorithms such as DSA or elliptic curve.

- 137
- 850 a. These algorithms may be in use for wrapping, signatures and other operations. There
851 is no guarantee that these keys can migrate to other TPM devices or that other TPM
852 devices will accept signatures from these additional algorithms.
- 853 b. If the output key or data blob generated with a storage key consists of more than one
854 block, the TPM MUST protect the integrity of the blob by means of appropriate
855 chaining mechanisms.
8562. All storage keys MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key or greater. The
857 TPM SHALL NOT load a storage key whose strength less than that of a 2048 bits RSA
858 key.
8593. All AIK MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key, or greater.

860 4.2.2.1 RSA Engine

861 **Start of informative comment**

862 The RSA asymmetric algorithm is used for digital signatures and for encryption.
863 For RSA keys the PKCS #1 standard provides the implementation details for digital
864 signature, encryption and data formats.

865 There is no requirement concerning how the RSA algorithm is to be implemented. TPM
866 manufacturers may use Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT) implementations or any other
867 method. Designers should review P1363 for guidance on RSA implementations.

868 For keys that are required to be 2048-bit RSA keys, the default $2^{16}+1$ exponent will be
869 required. This guarantees the strength of the key without walking a hierarchy that cannot
870 necessarily be walked reliably.

871 **End of informative comment**

8721. The TPM MUST support RSA.
8732. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for encryption and digital signatures.
8743. The TPM MUST support key sizes of 512, 1024, and 2048 bits. The TPM MAY support
875 other key sizes.
- 876 a. The minimum RECOMMENDED key size is 2048 bits.
- 877 b. In FIPS mode, the minimum key size MUST be 1024.
8784. The TPM MUST support an RSA public exponent of $2^{16}+1$. The TPM MAY support other
879 exponent values.
8805. TPM devices that use CRT as the RSA implementation MUST provide protection and
881 detection of failures during the CRT process to avoid attacks on the private key.

882 4.2.2.2 Signature Operations

883 **Start of informative comment**

884 The TPM performs signatures on both internal items and on requested external blobs. The
885 rules for signatures apply to both operations.

886 **End of informative comment**

8871. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for signature operations where signed data is
888 verified by entities other than the TPM that performed the sign operation.

8892. The TPM MAY use other asymmetric algorithms for signatures; however, there is no
890 requirement that other TPM devices either accept or verify those signatures.

8913. The TPM MUST use P1363 for the format and design of the signature output.

892 4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine

893 **Start of informative comment**

894 The TPM uses symmetric encryption to encrypt authentication information, provide
895 confidentiality in transport sessions and provide internal encryption of blobs stored off the
896 TPM.

897 For authentication and transport sessions, the mandatory mechanism is a Vernam one-
898 time-pad with XOR. The mechanism to generate the one-time-pad is MGF1 and the nonces
899 from the session protocol. When encrypting authorization data, the authorization data and
900 the nonces are the same size, 20 bytes, so a direct XOR is possible.

901 For transport sessions the size of data is larger than the nonces so there needs to be a
902 mechanism to expand the entropy to the size of the data. The mechanism to expand the
903 entropy is the MGF1 function from PKCS#1. This function provides a known mechanism
904 that does not lower the entropy of the nonces.

905 AES may be supported as an alternate symmetric key encryption algorithm.

906 Internal protection of information can use any symmetric algorithm that the TPM designer
907 feels provides the proper level of protection.

908 The TPM does not expose any of the symmetric operations for general message encryption.

909 **End of informative comment**

910 4.2.2.4 Using Keys

911 **Start of Informative comments:**

912 Keys can be symmetric or asymmetric.

913 As the TPM does not have an exposed symmetric algorithm, the TPM is only a generator,
914 storage device and protector of symmetric keys. Generation of the symmetric key would use
915 the TPM RNG. Storage and protection would be provided by the BIND and SEAL capabilities
916 of the TPM. If the caller wants to ensure that the release of a symmetric key is not exposed
917 after UNBIND/UNSEAL on delivery to the caller, the caller should use a transport session
918 with confidentiality set.

919 For asymmetric algorithms, the TPM generates and operates on RSA keys. The keys can be
920 held only by the TPM or in conjunction with the caller of the TPM. If the private portion of a
921 key is in use outside of the TPM it is the responsibility of the caller and user of that key to
922 ensure the protections of the key.

923 The TPM has provisions to indicate if a key is held exclusively for the TPM or can be shared
924 with entities off of the TPM.

925 **End of informative comments.**

- 146
9261. A secret key is a key that is a private asymmetric key or a symmetric key.
9272. Data SHOULD NOT be used as a secret key by a TCG protected capability unless that
928 data has been extant only in a shielded location.
9293. A key generated by a TCG protected capability SHALL NOT be used as a secret key
930 unless that key has been extant only in a shielded location.
9314. A secret key obtained by a TCG protected capability from a Protected Storage blob
932 SHALL be extant only in a shielded location.

933 **4.2.3 Key Generation**

934 **Start of informative comment**

935The Key Generation component, Figure 4:a C2, creates RSA key pairs and symmetric keys.
936TCG places no minimum requirements on key generation times for asymmetric or
937symmetric keys.

938 **End of informative comment**

939 **4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA**

940The TPM MUST generate asymmetric key pairs. The generate function is a protected
941capability and the private key is held in a shielded location. The implementation of the
942generate function MUST be in accordance with P1363.

943The prime-number testing for the RSA algorithm MUST use the definitions of P1363. If
944additional asymmetric algorithms are available, they MUST use the definitions from P1363
945for the underlying basis of the asymmetric key (for example, elliptic curve fitting).

946 **4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation**

947The creation of all nonce values MUST use the next n bits from the TPM RNG.

948 **4.2.4 HMAC Engine**

949 **Start of informative comment**

950The HMAC engine, Figure 4:a C3, provides two pieces of information to the TPM: proof of
951knowledge of the AuthData and proof that the request arriving is authorized and has no
952modifications made to the command in transit.

953The HMAC definition is for the HMAC calculation only. It does not specify the order or
954mechanism that transports the data from caller to actual TPM.

955The creation of the HMAC is order dependent. Each command has specific items that are
956portions of the HMAC calculation. The actual calculation starts with the definition from
957RFC 2104.

958RFC 2104 requires the selection of two parameters to properly define the HMAC in use.
959These values are the key length and the block size. This specification will use a key length
960of 20 bytes and a block size of 64 bytes. These values are known in the RFC as K for the key
961length and B as the block size.

962The basic construct is

963 $H(K \text{ XOR opad}, H(K \text{ XOR ipad}, \text{text}))$

964 where

965 H = the SHA1 hash operation

966 K = the key or the AuthData

967 XOR = the xor operation

968 opad = the byte 0x5C repeated B times

969 B = the block length

970 ipad = the byte 0x36 repeated B times

971 text = the message information and any parameters from the command

972 **End of informative comment**

973 The TPM MUST support the calculation of an HMAC according to RFC 2104.

974 The size of the key (K in RFC 2104) MUST be 20 bytes. The block size (B in RFC 2104)
975 MUST be 64 bytes.

976 The order of the parameters is critical to the TPM's ability to recreate the HMAC. Not all of
977 the fields are sent on the wire for each command for instance only one of the nonce values
978 travels on the wire. Each command interface definition indicates what parameters are
979 involved in the HMAC calculation.

980 **4.2.5 Random Number Generator**

981 **Start of informative comment**

982 The Random Number Generator (RNG) component, Figure 6:a C4 is the source of
983 randomness in the TPM. The TPM uses these random values for nonces, key generation,
984 and randomness in signatures.

985 The RNG consists of a state-machine that accepts and mixes unpredictable data and a post-
986 processor that has a one-way function (e.g. SHA-1). The idea behind the design is that a
987 TPM can be good source of randomness without having to require a genuine source of
988 hardware entropy.

989 The state-machine can have a non-volatile state initialized with unpredictable random data
990 during TPM manufacturing before delivery of the TPM to the customers. The state-machine
991 can accept, at any time, further (unpredictable) data, or entropy, to salt the random
992 number. Such data comes from hardware or software sources – for example; from thermal
993 noise, or by monitoring random keyboard strokes or mouse movements. The RNG requires a
994 reseeding after each reset of the TPM. A true hardware source of entropy is likely to supply
995 entropy at a higher baud rate than a software source.

996 When adding entropy to the state-machine, the process must ensure that after the addition,
997 no outside source can gain any visibility into the new state of the state-machine. Neither
998 the Owner of the TPM nor the manufacturer of the TPM can deduce the state of the state-
999 machine after shipment of the TPM. The RNG post-processor condenses the output of the
1000 state-machine into data that has sufficient and uniform entropy. The one-way function
1001 should use more bits of input data than it produces as output.

155

1002Our definition of the RNG allows implementation of a Pseudo Random Number Generator
1003(PRNG) algorithm. However, on devices where a hardware source of entropy is available, a
1004PRNG need not be implemented. This specification refers to both RNG and PRNG
1005implementations as the RNG mechanism. There is no need to distinguish between the two
1006at the TCG specification level.

1007The TPM should be able to provide 32 bytes of randomness on each call. Larger requests
1008may fail with not enough randomness being available.

1009**End of informative comment**

10101. The RNG for the TPM will consist of the following components:

1011 a. Entropy source and collector

1012 b. State register

1013 c. Mixing function

10142. The RNG capability is a TPM-protected capability with no access control.

10153. The RNG output may or may not be shielded data. When the data is for internal use by
1016 the TPM (e.g., generation of tpmProof or an asymmetric key), the data **MUST** be held in a
1017 shielded location. The RNG output for internal use **MUST** not be known outside the
1018 TPM. In particular, it **MUST** not be known by the TPM manufacturer. When the data is
1019 for use by the TSS or another external caller, the data is not shielded.

10204. In FIPS mode, the RNG **MUST** be a NIST approved RNG. The NIST self-test requirements
1021 **MUST** be satisfied.

1022 **4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector**

1023**Start of informative comment**

1024The entropy source is the process or processes that provide entropy. These types of sources
1025could include noise, clock variations, air movement, and other types of events.

1026The entropy collector is the process that collects the entropy, removes bias, and smoothes
1027the output. The collector differs from the mixing function in that the collector may have
1028special code to handle any bias or skewing of the raw entropy data. For instance, if the
1029entropy source has a bias of creating 60 percent 1s and only 40 percent 0s, then the
1030collector design takes that bias into account before sending the information to the state
1031register.

1032**End of informative comment**

10331. The entropy source **MUST** provide entropy to the state register in a manner that provides
1034 entropy that is not visible to an outside process.

1035 a. For compliance purposes, the entropy source **MAY** be outside of the TPM; however,
1036 attention **MUST** be paid to the reporting mechanism.

10372. The entropy source **MUST** provide the information only to the state register.

1038 a. The entropy source may provide information that has a bias, so the entropy collector
1039 must remove the bias before updating the state register. The bias removal could use
1040 the mixing function or a function specifically designed to handle the bias of the
1041 entropy source.

- 1042 b. The entropy source can be a single device (such as hardware noise) or a combination
1043 of events (such as disk timings). It is the responsibility of the entropy collector to
1044 update the state register whenever the collector has additional entropy.

1045 **4.2.5.2 State Register**

1046 **Start of informative comment**

1047 The state register implementation may use two registers: a non-volatile register rngState
1048 and a volatile register. The TPM loads the volatile register from the non-volatile register on
1049 startup. Each subsequent change to the state register from either the entropy source or the
1050 mixing function affects the volatile state register. The TPM saves the current value of the
1051 volatile state register to the non-volatile register on TPM power-down. The TPM may update
1052 the non-volatile register at any other time. The reasons for using two registers are:

- 1053 To handle an implementation in which the non-volatile register is in a flash device;
1054 To avoid overuse of the flash, as the number of writes to a flash device are limited.

1055 **End of informative comment**

1056 1. The state register is in a TPM shielded-location.

- 1057 a. The state register **MUST** be non-volatile.
1058 b. The update function to the state register is a TPM protected-capability.
1059 c. The primary input to the update function **SHOULD** be the entropy collector.
1060 2. If the current value of the state register is unknown, calls made to the update function
1061 with known data **MUST NOT** result in the state register ending up in a state that an
1062 attacker could know.
1063 a. This requirement implies that the addition of known data **MUST NOT** result in a
1064 decrease in the entropy of the state register.
1065 3. The TPM **MUST NOT** export the state register.

1066 **4.2.5.3 Mixing Function**

1067 **Start of informative comment**

1068 The mixing function takes the state register and produces output. The mixing function is a
1069 TPM protected-capability. The mixing function takes the value from a state register and
1070 creates the RNG output. If the entropy source has a bias, then the collector takes that bias
1071 into account before sending the information to the state register.

1072 **End of informative comment**

1073 1. Each use of the mixing function **MUST** affect the state register.

- 1074 a. This requirement is to affect the volatile register and does not need to affect the non-
1075 volatile state register.

1076 **4.2.5.4 RNG Reset**

1077 **Start of informative comment**

1078 The resetting of the RNG occurs at least in response to a loss of power to the device.

164
1079These tests prove only that the RNG is still operating properly; they do not prove how much
1080entropy is in the state register. This is why the self-test checks only after the load of
1081previous state and may occur before the addition of more entropy.

1082**End of informative comment**

10831. The RNG MUST NOT output any bits after a system reset until the following occurs:

- 1084 a. The entropy collector performs an update on the state register. This does not include
1085 the adding of the previous state but requires at least one bit of entropy.
- 1086 b. The mixing function performs a self-test. This self-test MUST occur after the loading
1087 of the previous state. It MAY occur before the entropy collector performs the first
1088 update.

1089 **4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine**

1090**Start of informative comment**

1091The SHA-1, Figure 4:a C5, hash capability is primarily used by the TPM, as it is a trusted
1092implementation of a hash algorithm. The hash interfaces are exposed outside the TPM to
1093support Measurement taking during platform boot phases and to allow environments that
1094have limited capabilities access to a hash functions. The TPM is not a cryptographic
1095accelerator. TCG does not specify minimum throughput requirements for TPM hash
1096services.

1097**End of informative comment**

10981. The TPM MUST implement the SHA-1 hash algorithm as defined by FIPS-180-1.

10992. The output of SHA-1 is 160 bits and all areas that expect a hash value are REQUIRED
1100 to support the full 160 bits.

11013. The only commands that SHALL be presented to the TPM in-between a TPM_SHA1Start
1102 command and a TPM_SHA1Complete command SHALL be a variable number (possibly
1103 0) of TPM_SHA1Update commands.

1104 a. The TPM_SHA1Update commands can occur in a transport session.

11054. Throughout all parts of the specification the characters x1 || x2 imply the
1106 concatenation of x1 and x2

1107 **4.2.7 Power Detection**

1108**Start of informative comment**

1109The power detection component, Figure 4:a C6, manages the TPM power states in
1110conjunction with platform power states. TCG requires that the TPM be notified of all power
1111state changes.

1112Power detection also supports physical presence assertions. The TPM may restrict
1113command-execution during periods when the operation of the platform is physically
1114constrained. In a PC, operational constraints occur during the power-on self-test (POST)
1115and require Operator input via the keyboard. The TPM might allow access to certain
1116commands while in a constrained execution mode or boot state. At some critical point in the
1117POST process, the TPM may be notified of state changes that affect TPM command
1118processing modes.

1119 **End of informative comment**

1120 **4.2.8 Opt-In**

1121 **Start of informative comment**

1122 The Opt-In component, Figure 4:a C7, provides mechanisms and protections to allow the
1123 TPM to be turned on/off, enabled/disabled, activated/deactivated. The Opt-In component
1124 maintains the state of persistent and volatile flags and enforces the semantics associated
1125 with these flags.

1126 The setting of flags requires either authorization by the TPM Owner or the assertion of
1127 physical presence at the platform. The platform's manufacturer determines the techniques
1128 used to represent physical-presence. The guiding principle is that no remote entity should
1129 be able to change TPM status without either knowledge of the TPM Owner or the Operator is
1130 physically present at the platform. Physical presence may be asserted during a period when
1131 platform operation is constrained such as power-up.

1132 Non-Volatile Flags:

1133 `physicalPresenceLifetimeLock`

1134 `physicalPresenceHWEnable`

1135 `physicalPresenceCMDEnable`

1136 Volatile Flags:

1137 `physicalPresenceLock`

1138 `physicalPresence`

1139 The notation `physicalPresenceV` indicates the physical presence state that ordinals refer to
1140 when they say, for example, "if physical presence is asserted".

173
 1141

1142The following truth table explains the conditions in which the physicalPresenceV flag may
 1143be altered:

Persistent / Volatile	P	P	P	V	
Control Flags	physicalPresenceLifetimeLock	physicalPresenceHWEEnable	physicalPresenceCMDEnable	physicalPresenceLock	
Volatile Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	-	F	F	-	No access to physicalPresenceV flag.
	-	F	-	T	
	-	-	T	F	Access to physicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
	-	T	-	-	Access to physicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal enabled.
	-	T	T	F	Access to physicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
Persistent Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	T	F	F	-	Access to physicalPresenceV flag permanently disabled.
	T	F	T	T	Access to physicalPresenceV flag disabled until TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
	T	F	T	F	Exclusive access to physicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.
	T	T	F	-	Exclusive access to physicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal permanently enabled.
	T	T	T	F	Access to physicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.

1144

1145Table 4:a - Physical Presence Semantics

1146TCG also recognizes the concept of unambiguous physical presence. Conceptually, the use
 1147of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the Operator has higher
 1148precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Unambiguous physical presence may be
 1149used to override physicalPresenceV flag value under conditions specified by platform
 1150specific design considerations.

1151Additional details relating to physical presence can be found in sections on Volatile and
 1152Non-volatile memory.

1153**End of informative comment**

1154 4.2.9 Execution Engine

1155**Start of informative comment**

1156The execution engine, Figure 4:a C8, runs program code to execute the TPM commands
 1157received from the I/O port. The execution engine is a vital component in ensuring that
 1158operations are properly segregated and shield locations are protected.

1159 **End of informative comment**

1160 **4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory**

1161 **Start of informative comment**

1162 Non-volatile memory component, Figure 4:a C9, is used to store persistent identity and
1163 state associated with the TPM. The NV area has set items (like the EK) and also is available
1164 for allocation and use by entities authorized by the TPM Owner.

1165 The TPM designer should consider the use model of the TPM and if the use of NV storage is
1166 a concern. NV storage does have a limited life and using the NV storage in a high volume
1167 use model may prematurely wear out the TPM.

1168 There is no requirement for the TPM to protect against wear out by detecting that a write of
1169 the same value need not be performed. Applications should avoid frequent writes of the
1170 same value. For example, precede a TPM_SetCapability with a TPM_GetCapability and skip
1171 the write if the TPM already holds the desired value.

1172 **End of informative comment**

1173 **4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR)**

1174 **Start of informative comment**

1175 The DIR were a version 1.1 function. They provided a place to store information using the
1176 TPM NV storage.

1177 In 1.2 the DIR are deprecated and the use of the DIR should move to the general purpose
1178 NV storage area.

1179 The TPM must still support the functionality of the DIR register in the NV storage area.

1180 **End of informative comment**

1181 1. A TPM MUST provide one Data Integrity Register (DIR)

1182 a. The TPM DIR commands are deprecated in 1.2

1183 b. The TPM MUST reserve the space for one DIR in the NV storage area

1184 c. The TPM MAY have more than 1 DIR.

1185 2. The DIR MUST be 160-bit values and MUST be held in TPM shielded-locations.

1186 3. The DIR MUST be non-volatile (values are maintained during the power-off state).

1187 a. A TPM implementation need not provide the same number of DIRs as PCRs.

1188 **4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR)**

1189 **Start of informative comment**

1190 A Platform Configuration Register (PCR) is a 160-bit storage location for discrete integrity
1191 measurements. There are a minimum of 16 PCR registers. All PCR registers are shielded-
1192 locations and are inside of the TPM. The decision of whether a PCR contains a standard
1193 measurement or if the PCR is available for general use is deferred to the platform specific
1194 specification.

1195A large number of integrity metrics may be measured in a platform, and a particular
1196integrity metric may change with time and a new value may need to be stored. It is difficult
1197to authenticate the source of measurement of integrity metrics, and as a result a new value
1198of an integrity metric cannot be permitted to simply overwrite an existing value. (A rogue
1199could erase an existing value that indicates subversion and replace it with a benign value.)
1200Thus, if values of integrity metrics are individually stored, and updates of integrity metrics
1201must be individually stored, it is difficult to place an upper bound on the size of memory
1202that is required to store integrity metrics.

1203The PCR is designed to hold an unlimited number of measurements in the register. It does
1204this by using a cryptographic hash and hashing all updates to a PCR. The pseudo code for
1205this is:

1206 PCR_i New = HASH (PCR_i Old value || value to add)

1207There are two salient properties of cryptographic hash that relate to PCR construction.
1208Ordering – meaning updates to PCRs are not commutative. For example, measuring (A then
1209B) is not the same as measuring (B then A).

1210The other hash property is one-way-ness. This property means it should be computationally
1211infeasible for an attacker to determine the input message given a PCR value. Furthermore,
1212subsequent updates to a PCR cannot be determined without knowledge of the previous PCR
1213values or all previous input messages provided to a PCR register since the last reset.

1214If the TPM is disabled or deactivated, commands that extend a PCR (e.g., TPM_Extend,
1215TPM_SHA1CompleteExtend) return a PCR value of all zeros, and commands that use the
1216PCRs (e.g., TPM_PCRRead) are not available. However, the commands that extend a PCR
1217still update the PCR correctly and return success. For disabled, this is because the TPM
1218may become enabled later, and so must not miss a measurement. For deactivated, this is
1219because resource limited code like the CRTM will perform extends and may not be able to
1220handle a deactivated error case.

1221 **End of informative comment**

12221. The PCR MUST be a 160-bit field that holds a cumulatively updated hash value

12232. The PCR MUST have a status field associated with it

12243. The PCR MUST be in the RTS and should be in volatile storage

12254. The PCR MUST allow for an unlimited number of measurements to be stored in the PCR

12265. The PCR MUST preserve the ordering of measurements presented to it

12276. A PCR MUST be set to the default value as specified by the PCRReset attribute

12287. A TPM implementation MUST provide 16 or more independent PCRs. These PCRs are
1229 identified by index and MUST be numbered from 0 (that is, PCR0 through PCR15 are
1230 required for TCG compliance). Vendors MAY implement more registers for general-
1231 purpose use. Extra registers MUST be numbered contiguously from 16 up to max – 1,
1232 where max is the maximum offered by the TPM.

12338. The TCG-protected capabilities that expose and modify the PCRs use a 32-bit index,
1234 indicating the maximum usable PCR index. However, TCG reserves register indices 230
1235 and higher for later versions of the specification. A TPM implementation MUST NOT
1236 provide registers with indices greater than or equal to 230. In this specification, the
1237 following terminology is used (although this internal format is not mandated).

12389. The PSS MUST define at least define one measurement that the RTM MUST make and
1239 the PCR where the measurement is stored.

124010. A TCG measurement agent MAY discard a duplicate event instead of incorporating it in a
1241 PCR, provided that:

124211. A relevant TCG platform specification explicitly permits duplicates of this type of event to
1243 be discarded

124412. The PCR already incorporates at least one event of this type

124513. An event of this type previously incorporated into the PCR included a statement that
1246 duplicate such events may be discarded. This option could be used where frequent
1247 recording of sleep states will adversely affect the lifetime of a TPM, for example.

124814. PCRs and the protected capabilities that operate upon them MAY NOT be used until
1249 power-on self-test (TPM POST) has completed. If TPM POST fails, the TPM_Extend
1250 operation will fail; and, of greater importance, the TPM_Quote operation and TPM_Seal
1251 operations that respectively report and examine the PCR contents MUST fail. At the
1252 successful completion of TPM POST, all PCRs MUST be set to their default value (either
1253 0x00...00 or 0xFF...FF). Additionally, the UINT32 flags MUST be set to zero.

1254 **5. Endorsement Key Creation**

1255 **Start of informative comment**

1256 The TPM contains a 2048-bit RSA key pair called the endorsement key (EK). The public
1257 portion of the key is the PUBEK and the private portion the PRIVEK. Due to the nature of
1258 this key pair, both the PUBEK and the PRIVEK have privacy and security concerns.

1259 The TPM has the EK generated before the end customer receives the platform. The Trusted
1260 Platform Module Entity (TPME) that causes EK generation is also the entity that will create
1261 and sign the EK credential attesting to the validity of the TPM and the EK. The TPME is
1262 typically the TPM manufacturer.

1263 The TPM can generate the EK internally using the TPM_CreateEndorsementKey or by using
1264 an outside key generator. The EK needs to indicate the genealogy of the EK generation.

1265 Subsequent attempts to either generate an EK or insert an EK must fail.

1266 If the data structure TPM_ENDORSEMENT_CREDENTIAL is stored on a platform after an
1267 Owner has taken ownership of that platform, it SHALL exist only in storage to which access
1268 is controlled and is available to authorized entities.

1269 **End of informative comment**

1270 1. The EK MUST be a 2048-bit RSA key

1271 a. The public portion of the key is the PUBEK

1272 b. The private portion of the key is the PRIVEK

1273 c. The PRIVEK SHALL exist only in a TPM-shielded location.

1274 2. Access to the PRIVEK and PUBEK MUST only be via TPM protected capabilities

1275 a. The protected capabilities MUST require TPM Owner authentication or operator
1276 physical presence

1277 3. The generation of the EK may use a process external to the TPM and
1278 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair

1279 a. The external generation MUST result in an EK that has the same properties as an
1280 internally generated EK

1281 b. The external generation process MUST protect the EK from exposure during the
1282 generation and insertion of the EK

1283 c. After insertion of the EK the TPM state MUST be the same as the result of the
1284 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair execution

1285 d. The process MUST guarantee correct generation, cryptographic strength,
1286 uniqueness, privacy, and installation into a genuine TPM, of the EK

1287 e. The entity that signs the EK credential MUST be satisfied that the generation process
1288 properly generated the EK and inserted it into the TPM

1289 f. The process MUST be defined in the target of evaluation (TOE) of the security target
1290 in use to evaluate the TPM

1291 **5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK**

1292 **Start of informative comment**

1293 Exposure of the PRIVEK is a security concern.

1294 The TPM must ensure that the PRIVEK is not exposed outside of the TPM

1295 **End of informative comment**

1296 1. The PRIVEK MUST never be out of the control of a TPM shielded location

1297 **5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK**

1298 **Start of informative comment**

1299 There are no security concerns with exposure or use of the PUBEK.

1300 Privacy guidelines suggest that PUBEK could be considered personally identifiable
1301 information (PII) if it were associated in some way with personal information (PI) or
1302 associated with other PII, but PUBEK alone cannot be considered PII. Arbitrary random
1303 numbers do not represent a threat to privacy unless further associated with PI or PII. The
1304 PUBEK is an arbitrary random number that may be associated with aggregate platform
1305 information, but not personally identifiable information.

1306 An EK may become associated with personally identifiable information when an alias
1307 platform identifier (AIK) is also associated with PI. The attestation service could include
1308 personal information in the AIK credential, thereby making the AIK-PUBEK association PII –
1309 but not before.

1310 The association of PUBEK with AIK therefore is important to protect via privacy guidelines.
1311 The owner/user of the TPM should be able to control whether PUBEK is disclosed along
1312 with AIK. The owner/user should be notified of personal information that might be added to
1313 an AIK credential, which could result in AIK being considered PII. The owner/user should
1314 be able to evaluate the mechanisms used by an attestation entity to protect PUBEK-AIK
1315 associations before disclosure occurs. No other entity should be privy to owner/user
1316 authorized disclosure besides the intended attestation entity.

1317 Several commands may be used to negotiate the conditions of PUBEK-AIK disclosure.
1318 TPM_MakeIdentity discloses PUBEK-AIK in the context of requesting an AIK credential.
1319 TPM_ActivateIdentity ensures the owner/user has not been spoofed by an interloper. These
1320 interfaces allow the owner/user to choose whether disclosure is acceptable and control the
1321 circumstances under which disclosure takes place. They do not allow the owner/user the
1322 ability to retain control of PUBEK-AIK subsequent to disclosure except by traditional means
1323 of trusting the attestation entity to abide by an acceptable privacy policy. The owner/user is
1324 able to associate the accepted privacy policy with the disclosure operation (e.g.
1325 TPM_MakeIdentity).

1326 A persistent flag called readPubek can be set to TRUE to permit reading of PUBEK via
1327 TPM_ReadPubek. Reporting the PUBEK value is not considered privacy sensitive because it
1328 cannot be associated with any of the AIK keys managed by the TPM without using TPM
1329 protected-capabilities. Keys are encrypted with a nonce when flushed from TPM shielded-
1330 locations, Cryptanalysis of flushed keys will not reveal an association of EK to any AIK.

1331 The command that manipulates the readPubek flag is TPM_DisablePubekRead.

1332 **End of informative comment**

1333 **6. Attestation Identity Keys**

1334 **Start of informative comment**

1335 See 11.4 Attestation Identity Keys.

1336 **End of informative comment**

1337 **7. TPM Ownership**

1338 **Start of informative comment**

1339 Taking ownership of a TPM is the process of inserting a shared secret into a TPM shielded-
1340 location. Any entity that knows the shared secret is a TPM Owner. Proof of ownership
1341 occurs when an entity, in response to a challenge, proves knowledge of the shared secret.
1342 Certain operations in the TPM require authentication from a TPM Owner.

1343 Certain operations also allow the human, with physical possession of the platform, to assert
1344 TPM Ownership rights. When asserting TPM Ownership, using physical presence, the
1345 operations must not expose any secrets protected by the TPM.

1346 The platform owner controls insertion of the shared secret into the TPM. The platform
1347 owner sets the NV persistent flag ownershipEnabled that allows the execution of the
1348 TPM_TakeOwnership command. The TPM_SetOwnerInstall, the command that controls the
1349 value ownershipEnabled, requires the assertion of physical presence.

1350 Attempting to execute TPM_TakeOwnership fails when a TPM already has an owner. To
1351 remove an owner when the current TPM Owner is unable to remove themselves, the human
1352 that is in possession of the platform asserts physical presence and executes
1353 TPM_ForceClear which removes the shared secret.

1354 The insertion protocol that supplies the shared secret has the following requirements:
1355 confidentiality, integrity, remoteness and verifiability.

1356 To provide confidentiality the proposed TPM Owner encrypts the shared secret using the
1357 PUBEK. This requires the PRIVEK to decrypt the value. As the PRIVEK is only available in
1358 the TPM the encrypted shared secret is only available to the intended TPM.

1359 The integrity of the process occurs by the TPM providing proof of the value of the shared
1360 secret inserted into the TPM.

1361 By using the confidentiality and integrity, the protocol is useable by TPM Owners that are
1362 remote to the platform.

1363 The new TPM Owner validates the insertion of the shared secret by using integrity response.

1364 **End of informative comment**

1365 The TPM MUST ship with no Owner installed. The TPM MUST use the ownership-control
1366 protocol (OIAP or OSAP)

1367 **7.1 Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage**

1368 **Start of informative comment**

1369 The semantics of platform ownership are tied to the Root-of-trust-for-storage (RTS). The
1370 TPM_TakeOwnership command creates a new Storage Root Key (SRK) and new tpmProof
1371 value whenever a new owner is established. It follows that objects owned by a previous
1372 owner will not be inherited by the new owner. Objects that should be inherited must be
1373 transferred by deliberate data migration actions.

1374 **End of informative comment**

1375 **8. Authentication and Authorization Data**

1376 **Start of informative comment**

1377 Using security vernacular the terms below apply to the TPM for this discussion:

1378 Authentication: The process of providing proof of claimed ownership of an object or a
1379 subject's claimed identity.

1380 Authorization: Granting a subject appropriate access to an object.

1381 Each TPM object that does not allow "public" access contains a 160-bit shared secret. This
1382 shared secret is enveloped within the object itself. The TPM grants use of TPM objects based
1383 on the presentation of the matching 160-bits using protocols designed to provide protection
1384 of the shared secret. This shared secret is called the AuthData.

1385 Neither the TPM, nor its objects (such as keys), contain access controls for its objects (the
1386 exception to this is what is provided by the delegation mechanism). If an subject presents
1387 the AuthData, that subject is granted full use of the object based on the object's
1388 capabilities, not a set of rights or permissions of the subject. This apparent overloading of
1389 the concepts of authentication and authorization has caused some confusion. This is
1390 caused by having two similarly rooted but distinct perspectives.

1391 From the perspective of the TPM looking out, this AuthData is its sole mechanism for
1392 authenticating the owner of its objects, thus from its perspective it is authentication data.
1393 However, from the application's perspective this data is typically the result of other
1394 functions that might perform authentications or authorizations of subjects using higher
1395 level mechanisms such as OS login, file system access, etc. Here, AuthData is a result of
1396 these functions so in this usage, it authorizes access to the TPM's objects. From this
1397 perspective, i.e., the application looking in on the TPM and its objects, the AuthData is
1398 authorization data. For this reason, and thanks to a common root within the English
1399 language, the term for this data is chosen to be AuthData and is to be interpreted or
1400 expanded as either authentication data or authorization data depending on context and
1401 perspective.

1402 The term AuthData refers to the 160-bit value used to either prove ownership of, or
1403 authorization to use, an object. This is also called the object's shared secret. The term
1404 authorization will be used when referring the combined action of verifying the AuthData and
1405 allowing access to the object or function. The term authorization session applies to a state
1406 where the AuthData has been authentication and a session handle established that is
1407 associated with that authentication.

1408 A wide-range of objects use AuthData. It is used to establish platform ownership, key use
1409 restrictions, object migration and to apply access control to opaque objects protected by the
1410 TPM.

1411 AuthData is a 160-bit shared-secret plus high-entropy random number. The assumption is
1412 the shared-secret and random number are mixed using SHA-1 digesting, but no specific
1413 function for generating AuthData is specified by TCG.

1414 TCG command processing sessions (e.g. OSAP, ADIP) may use AuthData as an initialization
1415 vector when creating a one-time pad. Session encryption is used to encrypt portions of
1416 command messages exchanged between TPM and a caller.

1417 The TPM stores AuthData with TPM controlled-objects and in shielded-locations. AuthData
1418 is never in the clear, when managed by the TPM except in shielded-locations. Only TPM
1419 protected-capabilities may access AuthData (contained in the TPM). AuthData objects may
1420 not be used for any other purpose besides authentication and authorization of TPM
1421 operations on controlled-objects.

1422 Outside the TPM, a reference monitor of some kind is responsible for protecting AuthData.
1423 AuthData should be regarded as a controlled data item (CDI) in the context of the security
1424 model governing the reference monitor. TCG expects this entity to preserve the interests of
1425 the platform Owner.

1426 There is no requirement that instances of AuthData be unique.

1427 **End of informative comment**

1428 The TPM MUST reserve 160 bits for the AuthData. The TPM treats the AuthData as a blob.
1429 The TPM MUST keep AuthData in a shielded-location.

1430 The TPM MUST enforce that the only usage in the TPM of the AuthData is to perform
1431 authorizations.

1432 **8.1 Dictionary Attack Considerations**

1433 **Start of informative comment**

1434 The decision to provide protections against dictionary attacks is due to the inability of the
1435 TPM to guarantee that an authorization value has high entropy. While the creation and
1436 authorization protocols could change to support the assurance of high entropy values, the
1437 changes would be drastic and would totally invalidate any 1.x TPM version.

1438 Version 1.1 explicitly avoided any requirements for dictionary attack mitigation.

1439 Version 1.2 adds the requirement that the TPM vendor provide some assistance against
1440 dictionary attacks. The internal mechanism is vendor specific. The TPM designer should
1441 review the requirements for dictionary attack mitigation in the Common Criteria.

1442 The 1.2 specification does not provide any functions to turn on the dictionary attack
1443 prevention. The specification does provide a way to reset from the TPM response to an
1444 attack.

1445 By way of example, the following is a way to implement the dictionary attack mitigation.

1446 The TPM keeps a count of failed authorization attempts. The vendor allows the TPM Owner
1447 to set a threshold of failed authorizations. When the count exceeds the threshold, the TPM
1448 locks up and does not respond to any requests for a time out period. The time out period
1449 doubles each time the count exceeds the threshold. If the TPM resets during a time out
1450 period, the time out period starts over after TPM_Init, or TPM_Startup. To reset the count
1451 and the time out period the TPM Owner executes TPM_ResetLockValue. If the authorization
1452 for TPM_ResetLockValue fails, the TPM must lock up for the entire time out period and no
1453 additional attempts at unlocking will be successful. Executing TPM_ResetLockValue when
1454 outside of a time out period still results in the resetting of the count and time out period.

1455 **End of informative comment**

1456 The TPM SHALL incorporate mechanism(s) that will provide some protection against
1457 exhaustive or dictionary attacks on the authorization values stored within the TPM.

1458This version of the TPM specification does NOT specify the particular strategy to be used.
1459Some examples might include locking out the TPM after a certain number of failures,
1460forcing a reboot under some combination of failures, or requiring specific actions on the
1461part of some actors after an attack has been detected. The mechanisms to manage these
1462strategies are vendor specific at this time.

1463If the TPM in response to the attacks locks up for some time period or requires a special
1464operation to restart, the TPM MUST prevent any authorized TPM command and MAY
1465prevent any TPM command from executing until the mitigation mechanism completes. The
1466TPM Owner can reset the mechanism using the TPM_ResetLockValue command. The
1467TPM_ResetLockValue MUST be allowed to run exactly once while the TPM is locked up.

1468 9. TPM Operation

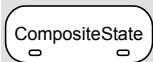
1469 Start of informative comment

1470 Through the course of TPM operation, it may enter several operational modes that include
1471 power-up, self-test, administrative modes and full operation. This section describes TPM
1472 operational states and state transition criteria. Where applicable, the TPM commands used
1473 to facilitate state transition or function are included in diagrams and descriptions.

1474 The TPM keeps the information relative to the TPM operational state in a combination of
1475 persistent and volatile flags. For ease of reading the persistent flags are prefixed by pFlags
1476 and the volatile flags prefixed by vFlags.

1477 The following state diagram describes TPM operational states at a high level. Subsequent
1478 state diagrams drill-down to finer detail that describes fundamental operations, protections
1479 on operations and the transitions between them.

1480 The state diagrams use the following notation:



1481 - Signifies a state.



1482 - Transitions between states are represented as a single headed arrows.



1483 - Circular transitions indicate operations that don't result in a transition to another
1484 state.



1485 - Decision boxes split state flow based on a logical test. Decision conditions are called
1486 Guards and are identified by bracketed text.

1487 < [text] > Bracketed text indicates transitions that are gated. Text within the brackets
1488 describes the pre-condition that must be met before state transition may occur.

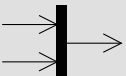
1489 < /name > Transitions may list the events that trigger state transition. The forward slash
1490 demarcates event names.



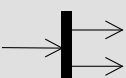
1491 - The starting point for reading state diagrams.



1492 - The ending point for state diagrams. Perpetual state systems may not have an ending
1493 indicator.



1494 - The collection bar consolidates multiple identical transition events into a single
1495 transition arrow.



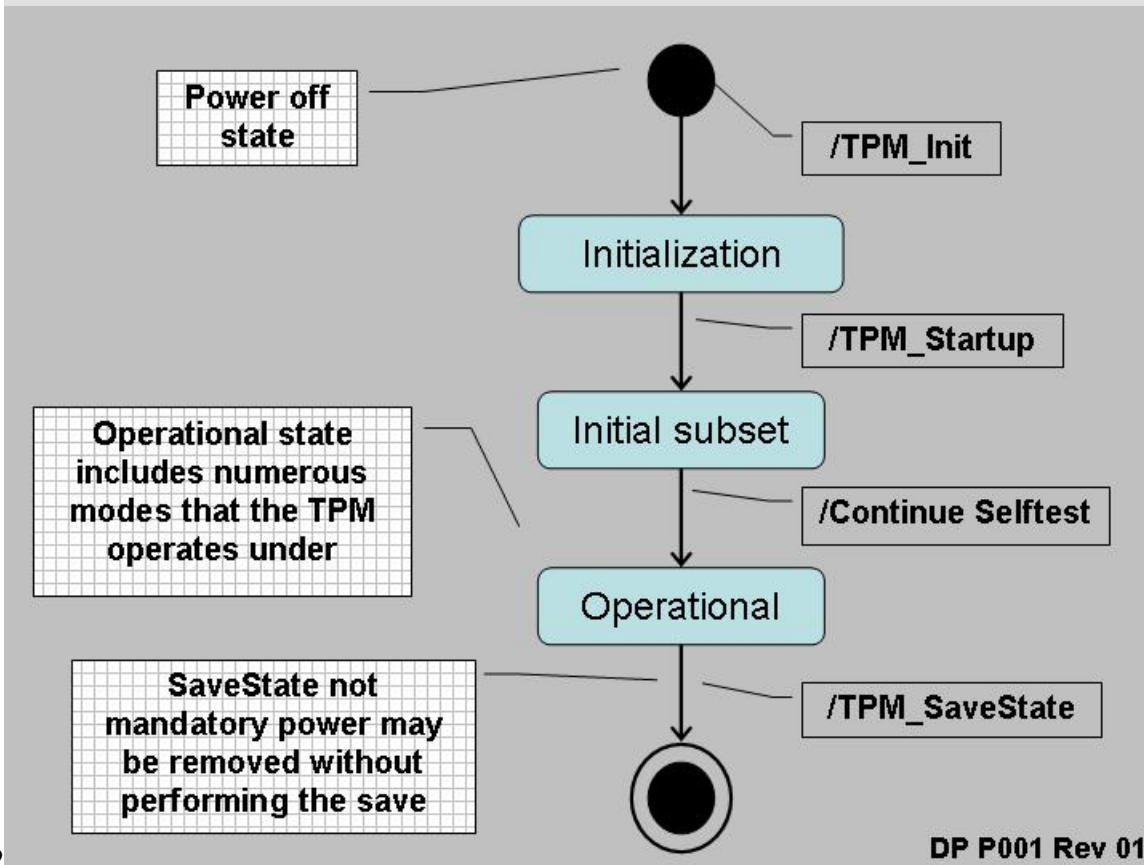
1496 - The distribution bar splits transitions to flow into multiple states.

1497 **H** - The history indicator means state values are remembered across context switches or
1498power-cycles.

1499**End of informative comment**

1500 9.1 TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow

1501**Start of informative comment**



1502

1503**Figure 9:b - TPM Operational States**

1504**End of informative comment**

1505 9.1.1 Initialization

1506**Start of informative comment**

1507TPM_Init transitions the TPM from a power-off state to one where the TPM begins an
1508initialization process. TPM_Init could be the result of power being applied to the platform or
1509a hard reset.

1510TPM_Init sets an internal flag to indicate that the TPM is undergoing initialization. The TPM
1511must complete initialization before it is operational. The completion of initialization requires
1512the receipt of the TPM_Startup command.

1513The TPM is not fully operational until all of the self-tests are complete. Successful
1514completion of the self-tests allows the TPM to enter fully operational mode.

1515 Fully operational does not imply that all functions of the TPM are available. The TPM needs
1516 to have a TPM Owner and be enabled for all functions to be available.

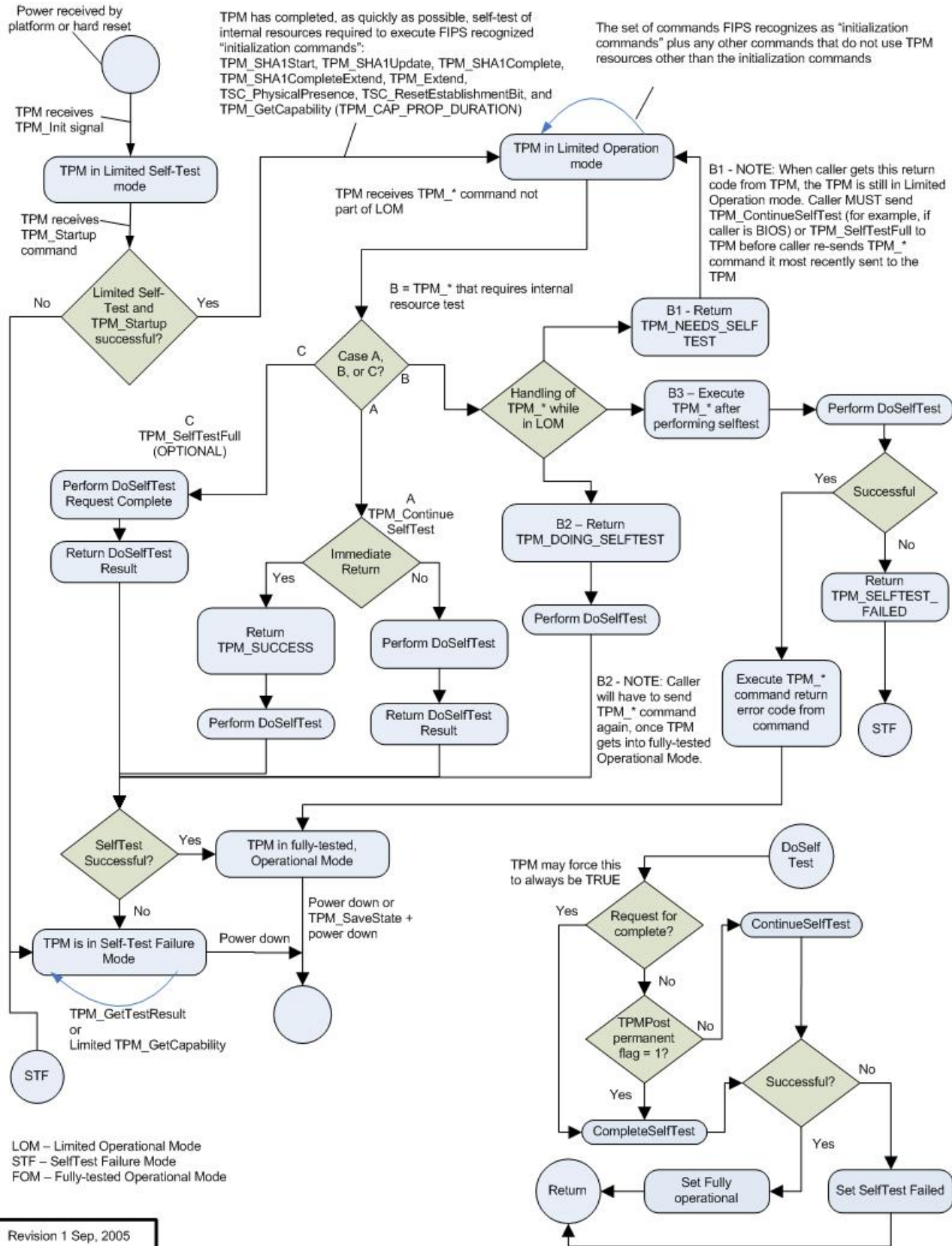
1517 The TPM transitions out of the operational mode by having power removed from the system.
1518 Prior to the exiting operational mode, the TPM prepares for the transition by executing the
1519 TPM_SaveState command. There is no requirement that TPM_SaveState execute before the
1520 transition to power-off mode occurs.

1521 **End of informative comment**

1522 1. After TPM_Init and until receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM MUST return
1523 TPM_INVALID_POSTINIT for all commands. Prior to receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM
1524 MAY enter shutdown or failure mode.

1525 **9.2 Self-Test Modes**

1526 **Start of informative comment**



Revision 1 Sep, 2005

1527
1528 Figure 9: c - Self-Test States

1529After initialization the TPM performs a limited self-test. This test provides the assurance
1530that a selected subset of TPM commands will perform properly. The limited nature of the
1531self-test allows the TPM to be functional in as short of time as possible. The commands
1532enabled by this self-test are:

1533TPM_SHA1xxx – Enabling the SHA-1 commands allows the TPM to assist the platform
1534startup code. The startup code may execute in an extremely constrained memory
1535environment and having the TPM resources available to perform hash functions can allow
1536the measurement of code at an early time. While the hash is available, there are no speed
1537requirements on the I/O bus to the TPM or on the TPM itself so use of this functionality
1538may not meet platform startup requirements.

1539TPM_Extend – Enabling the extend, and by reference the PCR, allows the startup code to
1540perform measurements. Extending could use the SHA-1 TPM commands or perform the
1541hash using the main processor.

1542TPM_Startup – This command must be available as it is the transition command from the
1543initial environment to the limited operational state.

1544TPM_ContinueSelfTest – This command causes the TPM to complete the self-tests on all
1545other TPM functions. If TPM receives a command, and the self-test for that command has
1546not been completed, the TPM may implicitly perform the actions of the
1547TPM_ContinueSelfTest command.

1548TPM_SelfTestFull – A TPM MAY allow this command after initialization, but typically
1549TPM_ContinueSelfTest would be used to avoid repeating the limited self tests.

1550TPM_GetCapability – A subset of capabilities can be read in the limited operation state.

1551TSC_PhysicalPresence and TSC_ResetEstablishmentBit.

1552The complete self-test ensures that all TPM functionality is available and functioning
1553properly.

1554**End of informative comment**

15551. At startup, a TPM MUST self-test all internal functions that are necessary to do
1556 TPM_SHA1Start, TPM_SHA1Update, TPM_SHA1Complete, TPM_SHA1CompleteExtend,
1557 TPM_Extend, TPM_Startup, TPM_ContinueSelfTest, a subset of TPM_GetCapability,
1558 TPM_GetTestResult, TSC_PhysicalPresence and TSC_ResetEstablishmentBit.

15592. The TPM MAY allow TPM_SelfTestFull to be used before completion of the actions of
1560 TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

15613. The TPM MAY implicitly run the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest upon receipt of a
1562 command that requires untested resources.

15634. The platform specific specification MUST define the maximum startup self-test time.

1564 **9.2.1 Operational Self-Test**

1565**Start of informative comment**

1566The completion of self-test is initiated by TPM_ContinueSelfTest. The TPM MAY allow
1567TPM_SelfTestFull to be issued instead of TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

1568TPM_ContinueSelfTest is the command issued during platform initialization after the
1569platform has made use of the early commands (perhaps for an early measurement), the

1570 platform is now performing other initializations, and the TPM can be left alone to complete
1571 the self-tests. Before any command other than the limited subset is executed, all self-tests
1572 must be complete.

1573 TPM_SelfTestFull is a request to have the TPM perform another complete self-test. This test
1574 will take some time but provides an accurate assessment of the TPM's ability to perform all
1575 operations.

1576 The original design of TPM_ContinueSelfTest was for the TPM to test those functions that
1577 the original startup did not test. The FIPS-140 evaluation of the specification requested a
1578 change such that TPM_ContinueSelfTest would perform a complete self-test. The rationale
1579 is that the original tests are only part of the initialization of the TPM; if they fail, the TPM
1580 does not complete initialization. Performing a complete test after initialization meets the
1581 FIPS-140 requirements. The TPM may work differently in FIPS mode or the TPM may simply
1582 write the TPM_ContinueSelfTest command such that it always performs the complete check.

1583 TPM_ContinueSelfTest causes a test of the TPM internal functions. When
1584 TPM_ContinueSelfTest is asynchronous, the TPM immediately returns a successful result
1585 code before starting the tests. When testing is complete, the TPM does not return any
1586 result. When TPM_ContinueSelfTest is synchronous, the TPM completes the self-tests and
1587 then returns a success or failure result code.

1588 The TPM may reject any command other than the limited subset if self test has not been
1589 completed. Alternatively, the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest may start automatically if the
1590 TPM receives a command and there has been no testing of the underlying functionality. If
1591 the TPM implements this implicit self-test, it may immediately return a result code
1592 indicating that it is doing self-test. Alternatively, it may do the self-test, then do the
1593 command, and return only the result code of the command.

1594 Programmers of TPM drivers should take into account the time estimates for self-test and
1595 minimize the polling for self-test completion. While self-test is executing, the TPM may
1596 return an out-of-band "busy" signal to prevent command from being issued. Alternatively,
1597 the TPM may accept the command but delay execution until after the self-test completes.
1598 Either of those alternatives may appear as if the TPM is blocking to upper software layers.
1599 Alternatively, the TPM may return an indication that is doing a self-test.

1600 Upon the completion of the self-tests, the result of the self-tests are held in the TPM such
1601 that a subsequent call to TPM_GetTestResult returns the self-test result.

1602 In version 1.1, there was a separate command to create a signed self-test,
1603 TPM_CertifySelfTest. Version 1.2 deprecates the command. The new use model is to perform
1604 TPM_GetTestResult inside of a transport session and then use
1605 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned to obtain the signature.

1606 If self-tests fail, the TPM goes into failure state and does not allow most other operations to
1607 continue. The TPM_GetTestResult will operate in failure mode so an outside observer can
1608 obtain information as to the reason for the self-test failure.

1609 A TPM may take three courses of action when presented with a command that requires an
1610 untested resource.

1611 1. The TPM may return TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST, indicating that the execution of the
1612 command requires TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

254
16132. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test and return a TPM_DOING_SELFTEST
1614 return code, causing the external software to retry the command.
16153. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test, execute the ordinal, and return the results
1616 of the ordinal.
1617The following example shows how software can detect either mechanism with a single piece
1618of code
16191. SW sends TPM_xxx command
16202. SW checks return code from TPM
16213. If return code is TPM_DOING_SELFTEST, SW attempts to resend
1622 a. If the TIS times out waiting for TPM ready, pause for self-test time then resend
1623 b. if TIS timeout, then error
16244. else if return code is TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST
1625 a. Send TPM_ContinueSelfTest
16265. else
1627 a. Process the ordinal return code
1628**End of informative comment**

16291. The TPM MUST provide startup self-tests. The TPM MUST provide mechanisms to allow
1630 the self-tests to be run on demand. The response from the self-tests is pass or fail.
16312. The TPM MUST complete the startup self-tests in a manner and timeliness that allows
1632 the TPM to be of use to the BIOS during the collection of integrity metrics.
16333. The TPM MUST complete the required checks before a given feature is in use. If a
1634 function self-test is not complete the TPM MUST return TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST or
1635 TPM_DOING_SELFTEST, or do the self-test before using the feature.
16364. There are two sections of startup self-tests: required and recommended. The
1637 recommended tests are not a requirement due to time constraints. The TPM
1638 manufacturer should perform as many tests as possible within the time constraints.
16395. The TPM MUST report the result of the tests that it performs.
16406. The TPM MUST provide a mechanism to allow self-test to execute on request by any
1641 challenger.
16427. The TPM MUST provide for testing of some operations during each execution of the
1643 operation.
16448. The TPM MUST check the following:
1645 a. RNG functionality
1646 b. Reading and extending the integrity registers. The self-test for the integrity registers
1647 will leave the integrity registers in a known state.
1648 c. Testing the EK integrity, if it exists

- 1649 i. This requirement specifies that the TPM will verify that the endorsement key pair
1650 can encrypt and decrypt a known value. This tests the RSA engine. If the EK has
1651 not yet been generated the TPM action is manufacturer specific.
- 1652 d. The integrity of the protected capabilities of the TPM
- 1653 i. This means that the TPM must ensure that its “microcode” has not changed, and
1654 not that a test must be run on each function.
- 1655 e. Any tamper-resistance markers
- 1656 i. The tests on the tamper-resistance or tamper-evident markers are under
1657 programmable control. There is no requirement to check tamper-evident tape or
1658 the status of epoxy surrounding the case.
- 16599. The TPM MUST check the following:
 - 1660 a. The hash functionality
 - 1661 i. This check MAY hash a known value and compare it to an expected result.
 - 1662 b. Any symmetric algorithms
 - 1663 i. This check MAY use known data with a random key to encrypt and decrypt the
1664 data
 - 1665 c. Any asymmetric algorithms
 - 1666 i. This check MAY use known data to encrypt and decrypt.
 - 1667 d. Any hardware crypto accelerators
- 166810. Self-Test Failure
 - 1669 a. When the TPM detects a failure during any self-test, the TPM MUST enter shutdown
1670 mode. This shutdown mode will allow only the following operations to occur:
 - 1671 i. Update. The update function MAY replace invalid microcode, providing that the
1672 parts of the TPM that provide update functionality have passed self-test.
 - 1673 ii. TPM_GetTestResult. This command can assist the TPM manufacturer in
1674 determining the cause of the self-test failure.
 - 1675 iii. TPM_GetCapability may return limited information as specified in the ordinal.
 - 1676 iv. All other operations will return the error code TPM_FAILEDSELFTEST.
 - 1677 b. The TPM MUST leave failure mode only after receipt of TPM_Init.
 - 1678 c. When the TPM detects a failure during any self-test, it SHOULD delete values
1679 preserved by TPM_SaveState.
- 168011. Prior to the completion of the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest the TPM MAY respond in
1681 two ways
 - 1682 a. The TPM MAY automatically invoke the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest.
 - 1683 i. The TPM MAY return TPM_DOING_SELFTEST.
 - 1684 ii. The TPM may complete the self-test, execute the command, and return the
1685 command result.
 - 1686 b. The TPM MAY return the error code TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST

1687 **9.3 Startup**1688**Start of informative comment**

1689Startup transitions the TPM from the initialization state to an operational state. The
1690transition includes information from the platform to inform the TPM of the platform
1691operating state. TPM_Startup has three options: Clear, State and Deactivated.

1692The Clear option informs the TPM that the platform is starting in a “cleared” state or most
1693likely a complete reboot. The TPM is to set itself to the default values and operational state
1694specified by the TPM Owner.

1695The State option informs the TPM that the platform is requesting the TPM to recover a saved
1696state and continue operation from the saved state. The platform previously made the
1697TPM_SaveState request to the TPM such that the TPM prepares values to be recovered later.
1698If the TPM enters failure mode after TPM_SaveState, the saved state should be deleted. It is
1699then possible that the State option will fail.

1700The Deactivated state informs the TPM that it should not allow further operations and
1701should fail all subsequent command requests. The Deactivated state can only be reset by
1702performing another TPM_Init.

1703**End of informative comment**1704 **9.4 Operational Mode**1705**Start of informative comment**

1706After the TPM completes both TPM_Startup and self-tests, the TPM is ready for operation.

1707There are three discrete states, enabled or disabled, active or inactive and owned or
1708unowned. These three states when combined form eight operational modes.

S1 Enabled – Active - Owned

S2 Disabled – Active - Owned

S3 Enabled – Inactive - Owned

S4 Disabled – Inactive - Owned

S5 Enabled – Active - Unowned

S6 Disabled – Active - Unowned

S7 Enabled – Inactive - Unowned

S8 Disabled – Inactive - Unowned

DP P003 Rev 01

1709

1710Figure 9:d - Eight Modes of Operation

1711S1 is the fully operational state where all TPM functions are available. S8 represents a mode
1712where all TPM features (except those to change the state) are off.

1713 Given the eight modes of operation, the TPM can be flexible in accommodating a wide range
1714 of usage scenarios. The default delivery state for a TPM should be S8 (disabled, inactive and
1715 unowned). In S8, the only mechanism available to move the TPM to S1 is having physical
1716 access to the platform.

1717 Two examples illustrate the possibilities of shipping combinations.

1718 Example 1

1719 The customer does not want the TPM to attest to any information relative to the platform.
1720 The customer does not want any remote entity to attempt to change the control options that
1721 the platform owner is setting. For this customer the platform manufacturer sets the TPM in
1722 S8 (disabled, deactivated and unowned).

1723 To change the state of the platform the platform owner would assert physical presence and
1724 enable, activate and insert the TPM Owner shared secret. The details of how to change the
1725 various modes is in subsequent sections.

1726 This particular sequence gives maximum control to the customer.

1727 Example 2

1728 A corporate customer wishes to have platforms shipped to their employees and the IT
1729 department wishes to take control of the TPM remotely. To satisfy these needs the TPM
1730 should be in S5 (enabled, active and unowned). When the platform connects to the
1731 corporate LAN the IT department would execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command
1732 remotely.

1733 This sequence allows the IT department to accept platforms into their network without
1734 having to have physical access to each new machine.

1735 **End of informative comment**

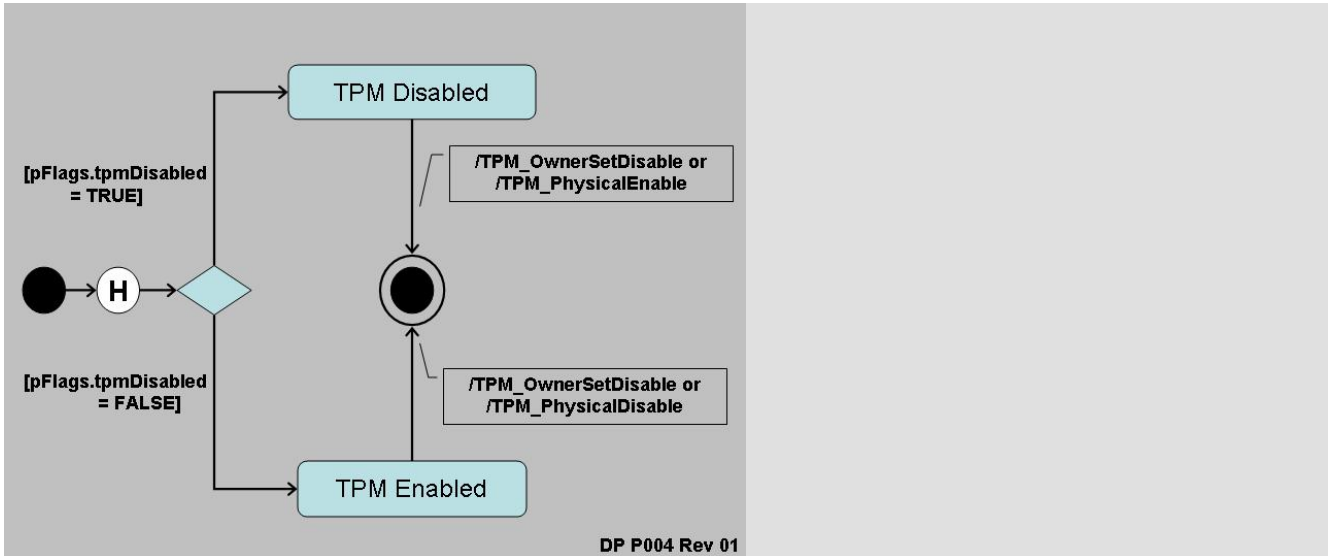
1736 The TPM MUST have commands to perform the following:

- 1737 1. Enable and disable the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner authorized or
1738 with the assertion of physical presence
- 1739 2. Activate and deactivate the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner
1740 authorized or with the assertion of physical presence
- 1741 3. Activate and deactivate the ability to take ownership of the TPM
- 1742 4. Assert ownership of the TPM.

1743 **9.4.1 Enabling a TPM**

1744 **Informative comment**

1745 A disabled TPM is not able to execute commands that use the resources of a TPM. While
1746 some commands are available (SHA-1 for example) the TPM is not able to load keys and
1747 perform TPM_Seal and other such operations. These restrictions are the same as for an
1748 inactive TPM. The difference between inactive and disabled is that a disabled TPM is unable
1749 to execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command. A disabled TPM that has a TPM Owner is not
1750 able to execute normal TPM commands.



1751
1752 pFlags.tpmDisabled contains the current enablement status. When set to TRUE the TPM is
1753 disabled, when FALSE the TPM is enabled.

1754 Changing the setting pFlags.tpmDisabled has no effect on any secrets or other values held
1755 by the TPM. No keys, monotonic counters or other resources are invalidated by changing
1756 TPM enablement. There is no guarantee that session resources (like transport sessions)
1757 survive the change in enablement, but there is no loss of secrets.

1758 The TPM_OwnerSetDisable command can be used to transition in either Enabled or
1759 Disabled states. The desired state is a parameter to TPM_OwnerSetDisable. This command
1760 requires TPM Owner authentication to operate. It is suitable for post-boot and remote
1761 invocation.

1762 An unowned TPM requires the execution of TPM_PhysicalEnable to enable the TPM and
1763 TPM_PhysicalDisable to disable the TPM. Operators of an owned TPM can also execute
1764 these two commands. The use of the physical commands allows a platform operator to
1765 disable the TPM without TPM Owner authorization.

1766 TPM_PhysicalEnable transitions the TPM from Disabled to Enabled state. This command is
1767 guarded by a requirement of operator physical presence. Additionally, this command can be
1768 invoked by a physical event at the platform, whether or not the TPM has an Owner or there
1769 is a human physically present. This command is suitable for pre-boot invocation.

1770 TPM_PhysicalDisable transitions the TPM from Enabled to Disabled state. It has the same
1771 guard and invocation properties as TPM_PhysicalEnable.

1772 The subset of commands the TPM is able to execute is defined in the structures document
1773 in the persistent flag section.

1774 Misuse of the disabled state can result in denial-of-service. Proper management of Owner
1775 AuthData and physical access to the platform is a critical element in ensuring availability of
1776 the system.

1777 **End of informative comment**

1778 1. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command that is executed with TPM
1779 Owner authorization.

17802. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command this is executed locally using
1781 physical presence.

1782 **9.4.2 Activating a TPM**

1783 **Informative comment**

1784A deactivated TPM is not able to execute commands that use TPM resources. A major
1785difference between deactivated and disabled is that a deactivated TPM CAN execute the
1786TPM_TakeOwnership command.

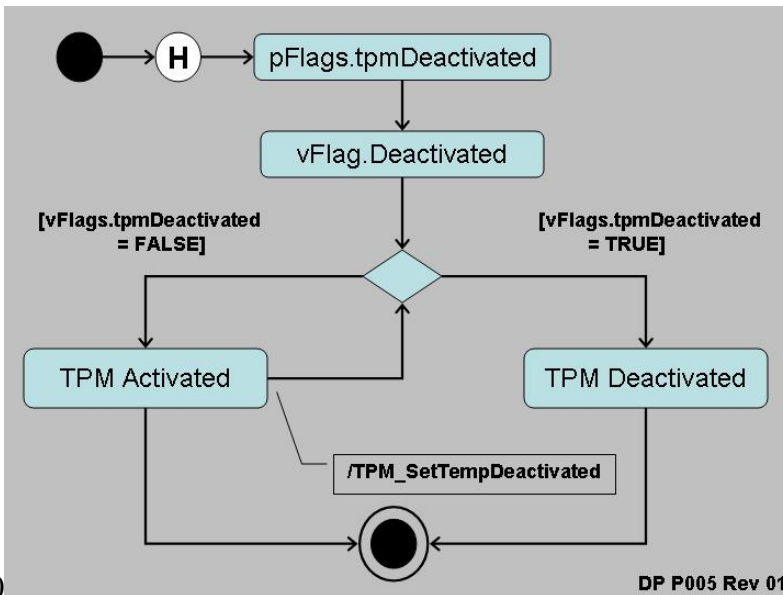
1787Deactivated may be used to prevent the (obscure) attack where a TPM is readied for
1788TPM_TakeOwnership but a remote rogue manages to take ownership of a platform just
1789before the genuine owner, and immediately has use of the TPM's facilities. To defeat this
1790attack, a genuine owner should set `disable==FALSE`, `ownership==TRUE`, `deactivate==TRUE`,
1791execute `TPM_takeOwnership`, and then set `deactivate==FALSE` after verifying that the
1792genuine owner is the actual TPM owner.

1793Activation control is with both persistent and volatile flags. The persistent flag is never
1794directly checked by the TPM, rather it is the source of the original setting for the volatile
1795flag. During TPM initialization the value of `pFlags.tpmDeactivated` is copied to
1796`vFlags.tpmDeactivated`. When the TPM execution engine checks for TPM activation, it only
1797references `vFlags.tpmDeactivated`.

1798Toggling the state of `pFlags.tpmDeactivated` uses `TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated`. This
1799command requires physical presence. There is no associated TPM Owner authenticated
1800command as the TPM Owner can always execute `TPM_OwnerSetDisabled` which results in
1801the same TPM operations. The toggling of this flag does not affect the current operation of
1802the TPM but requires a reboot of the platform such that the persistent flag is again copied
1803to the volatile flag.

1804The volatile flag, `vFlags.tpmDeactivated`, is set during initialization by the value of
1805`pFlags.tpmDeactivated`. If `vFlags.tpmDeactivated` is `TRUE` the only way to reactivate the
1806TPM is to reboot the platform and have `pFlags` reset the `vFlags` value.

1807If `vFlags.tpmDeactivated` is `FALSE`, running `TPM_SetTempDeactivated` will set
1808`vFlags.tpmDeactivated` to `TRUE` and then require a reboot of the platform to reactivate the
1809platform.



1810

1811Figure 9:e - Activated and Deactivated States

1812TPM activation is for Operator convenience. It allows the operator to deactivate the platform
1813(temporarily, using TPM_SetTempDeactivated) during a user session when the operator does
1814not want to disclose platform or attestation identity. This provides operator privacy, since
1815PCRs could provide cryptographic proof of an operation. PCRs are inaccessible when a TPM
1816is deactivated. They cannot be used for authorization, nor can they be read. The reboot
1817required to activate a TPM also resets the PCRs.

1818The subset of commands that are available when the TPM is deactivated is contained in the
1819structures document. The TPM_TakeOwnership command is available when deactivated.
1820The TPM_Extend command is available when deactivated so that software (e.g. a BIOS) can
1821run the command without the need to handle an error. The PCR extend operation is
1822irrelevant, since the resulting PCR value cannot be used.

1823**End of informative comment**

- 18241. The TPM MUST maintain a non-volatile flag that indicates the activation state
- 18252. The TPM MUST provide for the setting of the non-volatile flag using a command that
1826 requires physical presence
- 18273. The TPM MUST sets a volatile flag using the current setting of the non-volatile flag.
- 18284. The TPM MUST provide for a command that deactivates the TPM immediately
- 18295. The only mechanism to reactivate a TPM once deactivated is to power-cycle the system.

1830 **9.4.3 Taking TPM Ownership**

1831**Start of informative comment**

1832The owner of the TPM has ultimate control of the TPM. The owner of the TPM can enable or
1833disable the TPM, create AIK and set policies for the TPM. The process of taking ownership
1834must be a tightly controlled process with numerous checks and balances.

1835The protections around the taking of ownership include the enablement status, specific
1836persistent flags and the assertion of physical presence.

1837 Control of the TPM revolves around knowledge of the TPM Owner authentication value.
1838 Proving knowledge of authentication value proves the calling entity is the TPM Owner. It is
1839 possible for more than one entity to know the TPM Owner authentication value.

1840 The TPM provides no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value.

1841 Recovery from a lost or forgotten TPM Owner authentication value involves removing the old
1842 value and installing a new one. The removal of the old value invalidates all information
1843 associated with the previous value. Insertion of a new value can occur after the removal of
1844 the old value.

1845 A disabled and inactive TPM that has no TPM Owner cannot install an owner.

1846 To invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value use either TPM_OwnerClear or
1847 TPM_ForceClear.

1848 **End of informative comment**

1849 1. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be a 160-bits

1850 2. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be held in persistent storage

1851 3. The TPM MUST have no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value

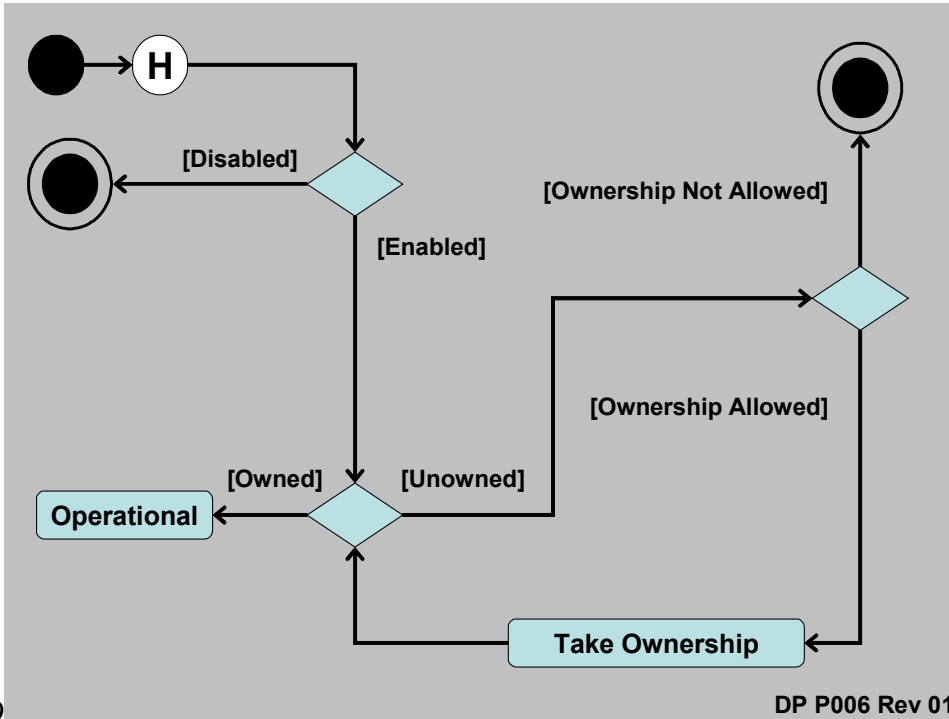
1852 **9.4.3.1 Enabling Ownership**

1853 **Informative comment**

1854 For the TPM_TakeOwnership command to succeed, pFlags.disable must be FALSE and
1855 pFlags.ownership must be TRUE.

1856 The following diagram shows the states and the operational checks the TPM makes before
1857 allowing the insertion of the TPM Ownership value.

1858



1859

1860

1861

1862The TPM checks pFlags.disable. If the TPM is enabled, the TPM checks for the existence of
 1863a TPM Owner. If an Owner is not present, the TPM checks pFlags.ownership. If TRUE, the
 1864TPM_TakeOwnership command will execute.

1865While the TPM has no Owner but is enabled and active, a limited subset of commands will
 1866successfully execute.

1867The TPM_SetOwnerInstall command toggles the state of the pFlags.ownership flag.
 1868TPM_SetOwnerInstall requires the assertion of physical presence to execute.

1869**End of informative comment**

1870 9.4.4 Transitioning Between Operational States

1871**Start of informative comment**

1872The following table is a recap of the commands necessary to transition a TPM from one state
 1873to another.

State	TPM Owner Auth	Physical Presence	Persistence
Disabled to Enabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalEnable	permanent
Enabled to Disabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalDisable	permanent
Inactive to Active		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_SetTempDeactivated	boot cycle

1874

1875 **End of informative comment**

1876 **9.5 Clearing the TPM**

1877 **Start of informative comment**

1878 Clearing the TPM is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. It is possible the
1879 platform owner will change when in this state.

1880 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication or the assertion of
1881 physical presence.

1882 The clear process performs the following tasks:

1883 Invalidate the SRK. Once invalidated all information stored using the SRK is now
1884 unavailable. The invalidation does not change the blobs using the SRK rather there is no
1885 way to decrypt the blobs after invalidation of the SRK.

1886 Invalidate tpmProof. tpmProof is a value that provides the uniqueness to values stored off of
1887 the TPM. By invalidating tpmProof all off TPM blobs will no longer load on the TPM.

1888 Invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value. With the authentication value invalidated
1889 there are no TPM Owner authenticated commands that will execute.

1890 Reset volatile and non-volatile data to manufacturer defaults.

1891 The clear must not affect the EK.

1892 Once cleared the TPM will return TPM_NOSRK to commands that require authentication.

1893 The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation. The TPM must go through TPM_Init to
1894 properly set the PCR values.

1895 Clear authentication comes from either the TPM owner or the assertion of physical
1896 presence. As the clear commands present a real opportunity for a denial of service attack
1897 there are mechanisms in place disabling the clear commands.

1898 Disabling TPM_OwnerClear uses the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command. The state of ability
1899 to execute TPM_OwnerClear is then held as one of the non-volatile flags.

1900 Enablement of TPM_ForceClear is held in the volatile disableForceClear flag.
1901 disableForceClear is set to FALSE during TPM_Init. To disable the command software
1902 should issue the TPM_DisableForceClear command.

1903 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue
1904 the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear operations if it has not
1905 been disabled by vFlags.DisabledForceClear being TRUE.

1906 The TPM can be configured to block all forms of clear operations. It is advisable to block
1907 clear operations to prevent an otherwise trivial denial-of-service attack. The assumption is
1908 the system startup code will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power-cycle after it
1909 is determined the TPM_ForceClear command will not be necessary. The purpose of the
1910 TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or
1911 forgotten the TPM Owner-authentication-data.

1912 The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the
1913 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

1914The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication, TPM_OwnerClear,
1915or the assertion of physical presence, TPM_ForceClear.

1916**End of informative comment**

19171. The TPM MUST support the clear operations.

1918 a. Clear operations MUST be authenticated by either the TPM Owner or physical
1919 presence

1920 b. The TPM MUST support mechanisms to disable the clear operations

19212. The clear operation MUST perform at least the following actions

1922 a. SRK invalidation

1923 b. tpmProof invalidation

1924 c. TPM Owner authentication value invalidation

1925 d. Resetting non-volatile values to defaults

1926 e. Invalidation of volatile values

1927 f. Invalidation of internal resources

19283. The clear operation must not affect the EK.

1929 **10. Physical Presence**

1930 **Start of informative comment**

1931 This specification describes commands that require physical presence at the platform before
1932 the command will operate. Physical presence implies direct interaction by a person – i.e.
1933 Operator with the platform / TPM.

1934 The type of controls that imply special privilege include:

- 1935 • Clearing an existing Owner from the TPM,
- 1936 • Temporarily deactivating a TPM,
- 1937 • Temporarily disabling a TPM.

1938 Physical presence implies a level of control and authorization to perform basic
1939 administrative tasks and to bootstrap management and access control mechanisms.

1940 Protection of low-level administrative interfaces can be provided by physical and electrical
1941 methods; or by software; or a combination of both. The guiding principle for designers is the
1942 protection mechanism should be difficult or impossible to spoof by rogue software.
1943 Designers should take advantage of restricted states inherent in platform operation. For
1944 example, in a PC, software executed during the power-on self-test (POST) cannot be
1945 disturbed without physical access to the platform. Alternatively, a hardware switch
1946 indicating physical presence is very difficult to circumvent by rogue software or remote
1947 attackers.

1948 TPM and platform manufacturers will determine the actual implementation approach. The
1949 strength of the protection mechanisms is determined by an evaluation of the platform.

1950 Physical presence indication is implemented as a flag in volatile memory known as the
1951 physicalPresenceV flag. When physical presence is established (TRUE) several TPM
1952 commands are able to function. They include:

- 1953 TPM_PhysicalEnable,
- 1954 TPM_PhysicalDisable,
- 1955 TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated,
- 1956 TPM_ForceClear,
- 1957 TPM_SetOwnerInstall,

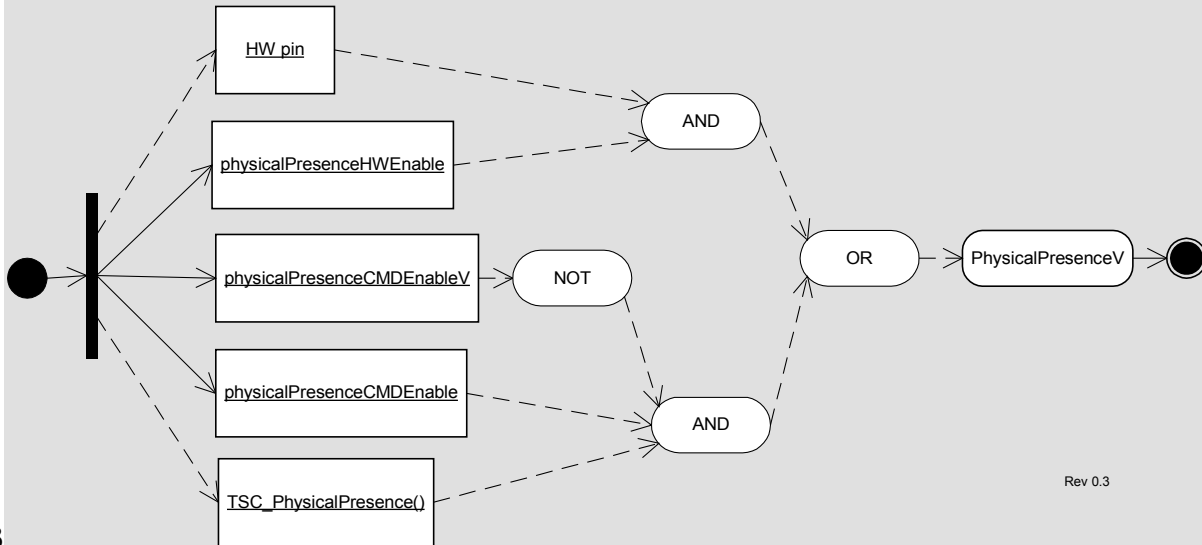
1958 In order to execute these commands, the TPM must obtain unambiguous assurance that
1959 the operation is authorized by physical-presence at the platform. The command processor
1960 in the I/O component checks the physicalPresenceV flag before continuing processing of
1961 TPM command blocks. The volatile physicalPresenceV flag is set only while the Operator is
1962 indeed physically present.

1963 TPM designers should take precautions to ensure testing of the physicalPresenceV flag
1964 value is not mask-able. For example, a special bus cycle could be used or a dedicated line
1965 implemented.

1966 There is an exception to physical presence semantics that allows a remote entity the ability
1967 to assert physical presence when that entity is not physically present. The
1968 TSC_PhysicalPresence command is used to change polarity of the physicalPresenceV flag.

1969Its use is heavily guarded. See sections describing the TPM Opt-In component; and Volatile
1970and Non-volatile memory components.

1971The following diagram illustrates the flow of logic controlling updates to the
1972physicalPresenceV flag:



1973

1974Figure 10:f - Physical Presence Control Logic

1975This diagram shows that the physicalPresenceV flag may be updated either by a HW pin or
1976through the TSC_PhysicalPresence command, but gated by persistent control flags and a
1977temporal lock. Observe, the reverse logic surrounding the use of TSC_PhysicalPresence
1978command. When the physicalPresenceCMDEnable flag is set and the physicalPresenceLock
1979flag is not set, the TSC_PhysicalPresence command may set physicalPresenceV.

1980The physicalPresenceV flag may be overridden by unambiguous physical presence.
1981Conceptually, the use of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the
1982Operator has higher precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Implementers
1983should consider this when implementing physical presence indicators.

1984End of informative comment

19851. The requirement for physical presence MUST be met by the platform manufacturer
1986 using some physical mechanism.

19872. It SHALL be impossible to intercept or subvert indication of physical presence to the
1988 TPM by the execution of software on the platform.

1989 **11. Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)**

1990 **Start of informative comment**

1991 The RTR is responsible for establishing platform identities, reporting platform
1992 configurations, protecting reported values, and providing a function for attesting to reported
1993 values. The RTR shares responsibility of protecting measurement digests with the RTS.

1994 The interaction between the RTR and RTS is a critical component. The design and
1995 implementation of the interaction between the RTR and RTS should mitigate observation
1996 and tampering with the messages. It is strongly encouraged that the RTR and RTS
1997 implementation occur in the same package such there are no external observation points.
1998 For a silicon based TPM this would imply that the RTR and RTS are in the same silicon
1999 package with no external busses.

2000 **End of informative comment**

2001 1. An instantiation of the RTS and RTR SHALL do the following:

- 2002 a. Be resistant to all forms of software attack and to the forms of physical attack
2003 implied by the platform's Protection Profile
- 2004 b. Supply an accurate digest of all sequences of presented integrity metrics

2005 **11.1 Platform Identity**

2006 **Start of informative comment**

2007 The RTR is a cryptographic identity used to distinguish and authenticate an individual
2008 TPM. The TPM uses the RTR to answer an integrity challenge.

2009 In the TPM, the Endorsement Key (EK) is the RTR. The EK is cryptographically unique and
2010 bound to the TPM.

2011 Prior to any use of the TPM, the RTR must be instantiated. Instantiation may occur during
2012 TPM manufacturing or platform manufacturing. The business issues and manufacturing
2013 flow determines how a specific TPM and platform is initialized with the EK.

2014 As the RTR is cryptographically unique, the use of the RTR must only occur in controlled
2015 circumstances due to privacy concerns. The EK is only available for two operations:
2016 establishing the TPM Owner and establishing Attestation Identity Key (AIK) values and
2017 credentials. There is a prohibition on the use of the EK for any other operation.

2018 **End of informative comment**

2019 1. The RTR MUST have a cryptographic identity.

- 2020 a. The cryptographic identity of the RTR is the Endorsement Key (EK).

2021 2. The EK MUST be

- 2022 a. Statistically unique

- 2023 i. When the TPM is in FIPS mode, the EK MUST be generated using a random
2024 number generator that meets FIPS requirements.

- 2025 ii. Difficult to forge or counterfeit

- 2026 b. Verifiable during the AIK creation process

317

20273. The EK SHALL only participate in

2028 a. TPM Ownership insertion

2029 b. AIK creation and verification

2030 **11.2 RTR to Platform Binding**

2031 **Start of informative comment**

2032When performing validation of the EK and the platform the challenger wishes to have
2033knowledge of the binding of RTR to platform. The RTR is bound to a TPM hence if the
2034platform can show the binding of TPM to platform the challenger can reasonably believe the
2035RTR and platform binding.

2036The TPM cannot provide all of the information necessary for the challenger to trust in the
2037binding. That information comes from the manufacturing process and occurs outside the
2038control of the TPM.

2039 **End of informative comment**

20401. The EK is transitively bound to the Platform via the TPM as follows:

2041 a. An EK is bound to one and only one TPM (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
2042 between an Endorsement Key and a TPM.)

2043 b. A TPM is bound to one and only one Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one
2044 correspondence between a TPM and a Platform.)

2045 c. Therefore, an EK is bound to a Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
2046 between an Endorsement Key and a Platform.)

2047 **11.3 Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations**

2048 **Start of informative comment**

2049The uniqueness property of cryptographic identities raises concerns that use of that identity
2050could result in aggregation of activity logs. Analysis of the aggregated activity could reveal
2051personal information that a user of a platform would not otherwise approve for distribution
2052to the aggregators. Both EK and AIK identities have this property.

2053To counter undesired aggregation, TCG encourages the use of domain specific AIK keys and
2054restricts the use of the EK key. The platform owner controls generation and distribution of
2055AIK public keys.

2056If a digital signature was performed by the EK, then any entity could track the use of the
2057EK. So use of the EK as a signature is cryptographically sound, but this does not ensure
2058privacy. Therefore, a mechanism to allow verifiers (human or machine) to determine that
2059the TPM really signed the message without using the EK is required.

2060 **End of informative comment**

2061 **11.4 Attestation Identity Keys**

2062 **Start of informative comment**

2063An Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias for the Endorsement Key (EK). The EK cannot
2064perform signatures for security reasons and due to privacy concerns.

2065 Generation of an AIK can occur anytime after establishment of the TPM Owner. The TPM
2066 can create a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

2067 The TPM Owner controls all aspects of the generation and activation of an AIK. The TPM
2068 Owner controls any data associated with the AIK. The AIK credential may contain
2069 application specific information. The AIK must contain identification such that the TPM can
2070 properly enforce the restrictions placed on an AIK.

2071 The AIK is an asymmetric key pair. For interoperability, the AIK is an RSA 2048-bit key. The
2072 TPM must protect the private portion of the asymmetric key and ensure that the value is
2073 never exposed. The user of an AIK must prove knowledge of the 160-bit AIK authorization
2074 value to use the AIK.

2075 An AIK is a signature key, and is never used for encryption. It only signs information
2076 generated internally by the TPM. The data could include PCR, other keys and TPM status
2077 information. The AIK must never sign arbitrary external data, since it would be possible for
2078 an attacker to create a block of data that appears to be a PCR value.

2079 AIK creation involves two TPM commands.

2080 The TPM_MakeIdentity command causes the TPM to generate the AIK key pair. The
2081 command also discloses the EK-AIK binding to the service that will issue the AIK credential.

2082 The TPM_ActivateIdentity command unwraps a session key that allows for the decryption of
2083 the AIK credential. The session key was encrypted using the PUBEK and requires the
2084 PRIVEK to perform the decryption.

2085 Use of the AIK credential is outside of the control of the TPM.

2086 **End of informative comment**

2087 1. The TPM MUST permanently mark an AIK such that, for all subsequent uses of the AIK,
2088 the AIK restrictions are enforced.

2089 2. An AIK MUST be:

- 2090 a. Statistically unique
- 2091 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit
- 2092 c. Verifiable to challengers

2093 3. For interoperability the AIK MUST be

- 2094 a. An RSA 2048-bit key

2095 4. The AIK MUST only sign data generated by the TPM

2096 **11.4.1 AIK Creation**

2097 **Start of informative comment**

2098 As the AIK is an alias for the EK. The AIK creation process requires TPM Owner
2099 authorization. The process actually requires two TPM Owner authorizations; creation and
2100 credential activation.

2101 The AIK credential creation process is outside the control of the TPM. However, the
2102 certification authority (CA) will attest (with the AIK credential) that the AIK is tied to valid
2103 Endorsement, Platform and Conformance credentials.

326
2104Without these credentials, the AIK cannot prove that PCR values belong to a TPM. An owner
2105may decide to trust any key generated by TPM_MakeIdentity without activating the identity
2106(e.g., because he is an administrator in a controlled company environment). In this case,
2107the owner needs no credential. Another challenger can only trust that the AIK belongs to a
2108TPM by seeing the credential of a trustworthy CA.

2109**End of informative comment**

- 21101. The TPM Owner MUST authorize the AIK creation process.
- 21112. The TPM MUST use a protected function to perform the AIK creation.
- 21123. The TPM Owner MUST indicate the entity that will provide the AIK credential as part of
2113 the AIK creation process.
- 21144. The TPM Owner MAY indicate that NO credential will ever be created. If the TPM Owner
2115 does indicate that no credential will be provided the TPM MUST ensure that no
2116 credential can be created.
- 21175. The TTP MAY apply policies to determine if the presented AIK should be granted a
2118 credential.
- 21196. The credential request package MUST be useable by only the Privacy CA selected by the
2120 TPM Owner.
- 21217. The AIK credential MUST be only obtainable by the TPM that created the AIK credential
2122 request.

2123 **11.4.2 AIK Storage**

2124**Start of informative comment**

2125The AIK may be stored on some general-purpose storage device.
2126When held outside of the TPM the AIK sensitive data must be encrypted and integrity
2127protected.

2128**End of informative comment**

- 21291. When held outside of the TPM AIK encryption and integrity protection MUST protect the
2130 AIK sensitive information
- 21312. The migration of AIK from one TPM to another MUST be prohibited

2132 **12. Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)**

2133 **Start of informative comment**

2134 The RTS provides protection on data in use by the TPM but held in external storage devices.
2135 The RTS provides confidentiality and integrity for the external blobs.

2136 The RTS also provides the mechanism to ensure that the release of information only occurs
2137 in a named environment. The naming of an environment uses the PCR selection to
2138 enumerate the values.

2139 Data protected by the RTS can migrate to other TPM.

2140 **End of informative comment**

2141 1. The number and size of values held by the RTS SHOULD be limited only by the volume
2142 of storage available on the platform

2143 2. The TPM MUST ensure that TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof is only inserted into
2144 TPM internally generated and non-migratable information.

2145 **12.1 Loading and Unloading Blobs**

2146 **Start of informative comment**

2147 The TPM provides several commands to store and load RTS controlled data.

	Class	Command	Analog	Comment
1	Data / Internal / TPM	TPM_MakeIdentity	TPM_ActivateIdentity	Special purpose data
2	Data / External / TPM	TSS_Bind	TPM_Unbind	
3	Data / Internal / PCR	TPM_Seal	TPM_Unseal	
4	Data / External / PCR			
5	Key / Internal / TPM	TPM_CreateWrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
6	Key / External / TPM	TSS_WrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
7	Key / Internal / PCR			
8	Key / External / PCR	TSS_WrapKeyToPcr	TPM_LoadKey	

2148 **13. Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols**

2149 **Start of informative comment**

2150 The purpose of the authorization protocols and mechanisms is to prove to the TPM that the
2151 requestor has permission to perform a function and use some object. The proof comes from
2152 the knowledge of a shared secret.

2153 AuthData is available for the TPM Owner and each entity (keys, for example) that the TPM
2154 controls. The AuthData for the TPM Owner and the SRK are held within the TPM itself and
2155 the AuthData for other entities are held with the entity.

2156 The TPM Owner AuthData allows the Owner to prove ownership of the TPM. Proving
2157 ownership of the TPM does not immediately allow all operations – the TPM Owner is not a
2158 “super user” and additional AuthData must be provided for each entity or operation that
2159 has protection.

2160 The TPM treats knowledge of the AuthData as complete proof of ownership of the entity. No
2161 other checks are necessary. The requestor (any entity that wishes to execute a command on
2162 the TPM or use a specific entity) may have additional protections and requirements where
2163 he or she (or it) saves the AuthData; however, the TPM places no additional requirements.

2164 There are three protocols to securely pass a proof of knowledge of AuthData from requestor
2165 to TPM; the “Object-Independent Authorization Protocol” (OIAP), the “Object-Specific
2166 Authorization Protocol” (OSAP) and the “Delegate-Specific Authorization Protocol” (DSAP).
2167 The OIAP supports multiple authorization sessions for arbitrary entities. The OSAP
2168 supports an authentication session for a single entity and enables the confidential
2169 transmission of new authorization information. The DSAP supports the delegation of owner
2170 or entity authorization.

2171 New authorization information is inserted by the “AuthData Insertion Protocol” (ADIP)
2172 during the creation of an entity. The “AuthData Change Protocol” (ADCP) and the
2173 “Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol” (AACCP) allow the changing of the AuthData for
2174 an entity. The protocol definitions allow expansion of protocol types to additional TCG
2175 required protocols and vendor specific protocols.

2176 The protocols use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This requires that a nonce from one side be in
2177 use only for a message and its reply. For instance, the TPM would create a nonce and send
2178 that on a reply. The requestor would receive that nonce and then include it in the next
2179 request. The TPM would validate that the correct nonce was in the request and then create
2180 a new nonce for the reply. This mechanism is in place to prevent replay attacks and man-
2181 in-the-middle attacks.

2182 The basic protocols do not provide long-term protection of AuthData that is the hash of a
2183 password or other low-entropy entities. The TPM designer and application writer must
2184 supply additional protocols if protection of these types of data is necessary.

2185 The design criterion of the protocols is to allow for ownership authentication, command and
2186 parameter authentication and prevent replay and man-in-the-middle attacks.

2187 The passing of the AuthData, nonces and other parameters must follow specific guidelines
2188 so that commands coming from different computer architectures will interoperate properly.

2189 **End of informative comment**

21901. AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols
- 2191 a. OIAP
 - 2192 b. OSAP
 - 2193 c. DSAP
21942. Entity creation MUST use one of the following protocols
- 2195 a. ADIP
21963. Changing AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols
- 2197 a. ADCP
 - 2198 b. AACP
21994. The TPM MAY support additional protocols to authenticate, insert and change AuthData.
- 2200
22015. When a command has more than one AuthData value
- 2202 a. Each AuthData MUST use the same SHA-1 of the parameters
22036. Keys MAY specify authDataUsage -> TPM_AUTH_NEVER
- 2204 a. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
2205 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
 - 2206 b. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1
 - 2207 i. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
2208 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag.
 - 2209 c. Users may choose to use a well-known value for the AuthData when setting
2210 AuthDataUsage to TPM_AUTH_NEVER.
 - 2211 d. If a key has AuthDataUsage set to TPM_AUTH_ALWAYS but is received in a
2212 command with the tag TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an
2213 error code.
22147. For commands that normally have 2 authorization sessions, if the tag specifies only one
2215 in the parameter array, then the first session listed is ignored (authDataUsage must be
2216 TPM_AUTH_NEVER for this key) and the incoming session data is used for the second
2217 auth session in the list.
22188. Keys MAY specify AuthDataUsage -> TPM_NO_READ_PUBKEY_AUTH
- 2219 a. If the key used in a command to read the public portion of the key (e.g.
2220 TPM_CertifyKey, TPM_GetPubKey)
 - 2221 i. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
2222 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX, the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
 - 2223 ii. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1, the TPM will compute the
2224 AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData location within the key,
2225 IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag
 - 2226 b. else if the key used in command to read/access the private portion of the key(e.g.
2227 TPM_Sign)

- 2228 i. If the tag is TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an error
2229 code.

2230

2231 **13.1 Authorization Session Setup**

2232 **Start of informative comment**

2233 The TPM provides two protocols for authorizing the use of entities without revealing the
2234 AuthData on the network or the connection to the TPM. In both cases, the protocol
2235 exchanges nonce-data so that both sides of the transaction can compute a hash using
2236 shared secrets and nonce-data. Each side generates the hash value and can compare to the
2237 value transmitted. Network listeners cannot directly infer the AuthData from the hashed
2238 objects sent over the network.

2239 The first protocol is the Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP), which allows the
2240 exchange of nonces with a specific TPM. Once an OIAP session is established, its nonces
2241 can be used to authorize the use of any entity managed by the TPM. The session can live
2242 indefinitely until either party requests the session termination. The TPM_OIAP function
2243 starts the OIAP session.

2244 The second protocol is the Object Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP). The OSAP allows
2245 establishment of an authentication session for a single entity. The session creates nonces
2246 that can authorize multiple commands without additional session-establishment overhead,
2247 but is bound to a specific entity. The TPM_OSAP command starts the OSAP session. The
2248 TPM_OSAP specifies the entity to which the authorization is bound.

2249 Most commands allow either form of authorization protocol. In general, however, the OIAP
2250 is preferred – it is more generally useful because it allows usage of the same session to
2251 provide authorization for different entities. The OSAP is, however, necessary for operations
2252 that set or reset AuthData.

2253 OIAP sessions were designed for reasons of efficiency; only one setup process is required for
2254 potentially many authorizations.

2255 An OSAP session is doubly efficient because only one setup process is required for
2256 potentially many authorization calculations and the entity AuthData secret is required only
2257 once. This minimizes exposure of the AuthData secret and can minimize human interaction
2258 in the case where a person supplies the AuthData information. The disadvantage of the
2259 OSAP is that a distinct session needs to be setup for each entity that requires authorization.
2260 The OSAP creates an ephemeral secret that is used throughout the session instead of the
2261 entity AuthData secret. The ephemeral secret can be used to provide confidentiality for the
2262 introduction of new AuthData during the creation of new entities. Termination of the OSAP
2263 occurs in two ways. Either side can request session termination (as usual) but the TPM
2264 forces the termination of an OSAP session after use of the ephemeral secret for the
2265 introduction of new AuthData.

2266 For both the OSAP and the OIAP, session setup is independent of the commands that are
2267 authorized. In the case of OIAP, the requestor sends the TPM_OIAP command, and with the
2268 response generated by the TPM, can immediately begin authorizing object actions. The
2269 OSAP is very similar, and starts with the requestor sending a TPM_OSAP operation, naming
2270 the entity to which the authorization session should be bound.

2271 The DSAP session is to provide delegated authorization information.

2272 All session types use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This means that the TPM creates a new
2273 nonce value each time the TPM receives a command using the session.

2274 Example OIAP and OSAP sessions are used to illustrate session setup and use. The
2275 fictitious command named TPM_Example occupies the place where an ordinary TPM
2276 command might be used, but does not have command specific parameters. The session
2277 connects to a key object within the TPM. The key contains AuthData that will be used to
2278 secure the session.

2279 There could be as many as 2 authorization sessions applied to the execution of a single TPM
2280 command or as few as 0. The number of sessions used is determined by TCG 1.2 Command
2281 Specification and is indicated by the command ordinal parameter.

2282 It is also possible to secure authorization sessions using ephemeral shared-secrets. Rather
2283 than using AuthData contained in the stored object (e.g. key), the AuthData is supplied as a
2284 parameter to OSAP session creation. In the examples below the key.usageAuth parameter is
2285 replaced by the ephemeral secret.

2286 **End of informative comment**

2287 **13.2 Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples**

2288 **Start of informative comment**

2289 To follow OIAP and OSAP protocol examples (Table 13:d and), the reader should become
2290 familiar with the parameters declared in Table 13:b and Table 13:c.

2291 Several conventions are used in the parameter tables that may facilitate readability.

2292 The Param column (Table 13:b) identifies the sequence in which parameters are packaged
2293 into a command or response message as well as the size in bytes of the parameter value. If
2294 this entry in the row is blank, that parameter is not included in the message. <> in the size
2295 column means that the size of the element is variable. It is defined either explicitly by the
2296 preceding parameter, or implicitly by the parameter type.

2297 The HMAC column similarly identifies the parameters that are included in HMAC
2298 calculations. This column also indicates the default parameters that are included in the
2299 audit log. Exceptions are noted under the specific ordinal, e.g. TPM_ExecuteTransport.

2300 The HMAC # column details the parameters used in the HMAC calculation. Parameters 1S,
2301 2S, etc. are concatenated and hashed to inParamDigest or outParamDigest, implicitly called
2302 1H1 and possibly 1H2 if there are two authorization sessions. For the first session, 1H1,
2303 2H1, 3H1, and 4H1 are concatenated and HMAC'ed. For the second session, 1H2, 2H2,
2304 3H2, and 4H2 are concatenated and HMAC'ed.

2305 In general, key handles are not included in HMAC calculations. This allows a lower
2306 software layer to map the physical handle value generated by the TPM to a logical value
2307 used by an upper software layer. The upper layer generally holds the HMAC key and
2308 generates the HMAC. Excluding the key handle allows the mapping to occur without
2309 breaking the HMAC. It is important to use a different authorization secret for each key to
2310 prevent a man-in-the-middle from altering the key handle.

2311 The Type column identifies the TCG data type corresponding to the passed value. An
2312 encapsulation of the parameter type is not part of the command message.

2313 The Name column is a fictitious variable name that aids in following the examples and
2314 descriptions.

2315 The double-lined row separator distinguishes authorization session parameters from
2316 command parameters. In Table 13:b the TPM_Example command has three parameters;
2317 keyHandle, inArgOne and inArgTwo. The tag, paramSize and ordinal parameters are
2318 message header values describing contents of a command message. The parameters below
2319 the double-lined row are OIAP / OSAP / DSAP or transport authorization session related. If
2320 a second authorization session were used, the table would show a second authorization
2321 section delineated by a second double-lined row. The authorization session parameters
2322 identify shared-secret values, session nonces, session digest and flags.

2323 In this example, a single authorization session is used signaled by the
2324 TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND tag.

2325 For an OIAP or transport session, the TPM_AUTHDATA description column specifies the
2326 HMAC key.

2327 For an OSAP or DSAP session, the HMAC key is the shared secret that was calculated
2328 during the session setup, not the key specified in the description. The key specified in the
2329 description was previously used in the shared secret calculation.

362
 2330

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	tag	TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of input bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4			TPM_KEY_HANDLE	keyHandle	Handle of a loaded key.
5	1	2S	1	BOOL	inArgOne	The first input argument
6	20	3S	20	UNIT32	inArgTwo	The second input argument.
7	4			TPM_AUTHHANDLE	authHandle	The authorization handle used for keyHandle authorization.
		2H1	20	TPM_NONCE	authLastNonceEven	Even nonce previously generated by TPM to cover inputs
8	20	3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
9	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	The continue use flag for the authorization handle
10	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	inAuth	The AuthData digest for inputs and keyHandle. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

2331 **Table 13:b - Authorization Protocol Input Parameters**

2332

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	Tag	TPM_TAG_RSP_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of output bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_RESULT	returnCode	The return code of the operation. See section 4.3.
		2S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4	3S	4	UINT32	outArgOne	Output argument
5	20	2 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceEven	Even nonce newly generated by TPM to cover outputs
		3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
6	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	Continue use flag, TRUE if handle is still active
7	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	resAuth	The AuthData digest for the returned parameters. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

2333 **Table 13:c - Authorization Protocol Output Parameters**

2334 **End of informative comment**

2335 **13.2.1 Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)**

2336 **Start of informative comment**

2337 The purpose of this section is to describe the authorization-related actions of a TPM when it
2338 receives a command that has been authorized with the OIAP protocol. OIAP uses the
2339 TPM_OIAP command to create the authorization session.

2340 Many commands use OIAP authorization. The following description is therefore necessarily
2341 abstract. A fictitious TPM command, TPM_Example is used to represent ordinary TPM
2342 commands.

2343 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send command TPM_Example. This is an authorized
2344 command that uses the key denoted by keyHandle. The user must know the AuthData for
2345 keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that requires authorization and this secret
2346 is used in the authorization calculation. Let us assume for this example that the caller of
2347 TPM_Example does not need to authorize the use of keyHandle for more than one
2348 command. This use model points to the selection of the OIAP as the authorization protocol.

2349 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
2350 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
2351 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2352 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
2353 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
2354 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
2355 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
2356 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

2357 There are two even nonces used to execute TPM_Example, the one generated as part of the
2358 TPM_OAIP command (labeled authLastNonceEven below) and the one generated with the
2359 output arguments of TPM_Example (labeled as nonceEven below).

371
 2360

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OIAP	TPM_OIAP	→	Create session Create authHandle Associate session and authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven	authHandle, authLastNonceEven	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves key.usageAuth (key must have been previously loaded) Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2361

2362 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session.
 2363 For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same example command is used
 2364 (ordinal = TPM_Example). However, a different key (newKey) with its own secret
 2365 (newKey.usageAuth) is to be operated on. To re-use the previous session, the
 2366 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

2367 The previous example shows the command execution reusing an existing authorization
 2368 session. The parameters created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2369 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
 2370 output parameters from the first protocol example.

2371

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves newKey.usageAuth (newKey must have been previously loaded) Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2372

2373 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions. Suppose,
2374 however, that the TPM user no longer requires the authorization session. There are three
2375 possibilities in this case:

2376 The user issues a TPM_Terminate_Handle command to the TPM (section 5.3).

2377 The input argument continueAuthSession can be set to FALSE for the last command. In
2378 this case, the output continueAuthSession value will be FALSE.

2379 In some cases, the TPM automatically terminates the authorization session regardless of the
2380 input value of continueAuthSession. In this case as well, the output continueAuthSession
2381 value will be FALSE.

2382 When an authorization session is terminated for any reason, the TPM invalidates the
2383 session's handle and terminates the session's thread (releases all resources allocated to the
2384 session).

2385 **End of informative comment**

2386 **OIAP Actions**

2387 1. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
2388 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
2389 TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE

2390 2. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the caller's nonce (nonceOdd) and
2391 continueAuthSession flag from the input parameter list, and store it in internal TPM
2392 memory with the authSession 'H'.

- 380
23933. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the TPM's nonce stored with the
2394 authorization session H (authLastNonceEven) computed during the previously executed
2395 command.
23964. The TPM MUST retrieve the secret AuthData (SecretE, say) of the target entity. The entity
2397 and its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
23985. The TPM SHALL perform a HMAC calculation using the entity secret data, ordinal, input
2399 command parameters and authorization parameters according to previously specified
2400 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
24016. The TPM SHALL compare HM to the AuthData value received in the input parameters. If
2402 they are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM_AUTHFAIL if the authorization
2403 session is the first session of a command, or TPM_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization
2404 session is the second session of a command. Otherwise, the TPM executes the command
2405 which (for this example) produces an output that requires authentication.
24067. The TPM SHALL generate a nonce (nonceEven).
24078. The TPM creates an HMAC digest to authenticate the return code, return values and
2408 authorization parameters to the same entity secret according to previously specified
2409 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
24109. The TPM returns the return code, output parameters, authorization parameters and
2411 AuthData digest.
241210. If the output continueUse flag is FALSE, then the TPM SHALL terminate the session.
2413 Future references to H will return an error.

2414 **13.2.2 Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)**

2415 **Start of informative comment**

2416 This section describes the actions of a TPM when it receives a TPM command via OSAP
2417 session. Many TPM commands may be sent to the TPM via an OSAP session. Therefore, the
2418 following description is necessarily abstract.

2419 The OSAP session is initialized through the creation of an ephemeral secret which is used to
2420 protect session traffic. Sessions are created using the TPM_OSAP command. This section
2421 illustrates OSAP using a fictitious command called TPM_Example.

2422 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send the TPM_Example command to the TPM. The
2423 keyHandle signifies that an OSAP session is being used and has the value "Auth1". The
2424 user must know the AuthData for keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that
2425 requires authorization and this secret is used in the authorization calculation.

2426 Let us assume that the sender needs to use this key multiple times but does not wish to
2427 obtain the key secret more than once. This might be the case if the usage AuthData were
2428 derived from a typed password. This use model points to the selection of the OSAP as the
2429 authorization protocol.

2430 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
2431 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
2432 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2433 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
2434 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
2435 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
2436 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
2437 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

2438 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
2439 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
2440 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
2441 generated by the system.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode. If TPM_Example requires ADIP encryption, use the algorithm indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2443

2444Table 13:d - Example OSAP Session

2445Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session
2446to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same
2447ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the
2448continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

2449The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire
2450formats of all of the information.

2451In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
2452output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

2453

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2454

2455 Table 13:e - Example Re-used OSAP Session

2456 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it
2457 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the
2458 OSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

2459 **End of informative comment**

2460 **OSAP Actions**

24611. The TPM MUST have been able to retrieve the shared secret (Shared, say) of the target
2462 entity when the authorization session was established with TPM_OSAP. The entity and
2463 its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.

24642. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
2465 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
2466 TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE.

24673. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM1, say) of the command parameters according
2468 to previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.

24694. The TPM SHALL compare HM1 to the AuthData value received in the command. If they
2470 are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM_AUTHFAIL if the authorization session
2471 is the first session of a command, or TPM_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization session is the
2472 second session of a command., the TPM executes command C1 which produces an
2473 output (O, say) that requires authentication and uses a particular return code (RC, say).

24745. The TPM SHALL generate the latest version of the even nonce (nonceEven).

24756. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM2) of the return parameters according to
2476 previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.

24777. The TPM returns HM2 in the parameter list.

24788. The TPM SHALL retrieve the continue flag from the received command. If the flag is
2479 FALSE, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
2480 handle H.

24819. If the shared secret was used to provide confidentiality for data in the received
2482 command, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
2483 handle H.

248410. Each time that access to an entity (key) is authorized using OSAP, the TPM MUST
2485 ensure that the OSAP shared secret is that derived from the entity using TPM_OSAP.

2486 **13.3 Authorization Session Handles**

2487 **Start of informative comment**

2488 The TPM generates authorization handles to allow for the tracking of information regarding
2489 a specific authorization invocation.

2490 The TPM saves information specific to the authorization, such as the nonce values,
2491 ephemeral secrets and type of authentication in use.

2492 The TPM may create any internal representation of the handle that is appropriate for the
2493 TPM's design. The requestor always uses the handle in the authorization structure to
2494 indicate authorization structure in use.

2495 The TPM must support a minimum of two concurrent authorization handles. The use of
2496 these handles is to allow the Owner to have an authorization active in addition to an active
2497 authorization for an entity.

2498 To ensure garbage collection and the proper removal of security information, the requestor
2499 should terminate all handles. Termination of the handle uses the continue-use flag to
2500 indicate to the TPM that the handle should be terminated.

2501 Termination of a handle instructs the TPM to perform garbage collection on all AuthData.
2502 Garbage collection includes the deletion of the ephemeral secret.

2503 **End of informative comment**

2504 1. The TPM MUST support authorization handles. See Section 23 Session pool.

2505 2. The TPM MUST support authorization handle termination. The termination includes
2506 secure deletion of all authorization session information.

2507**13.4 Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)**

2508**Start of informative comment**

2509The ADIP allows for the creation of new entities and the secure insertion of the new entity
2510AuthData. The transmission of the new AuthData uses encryption with the key based on
2511the shared secret of an OSAP session.

2512The creation of AuthData is the responsibility of the entity owner. He or she may use
2513whatever process he or she wishes. The transmission of the AuthData from the entity owner
2514to the TPM requires confidentiality and integrity. Since these requirements are not always
2515met (e.g., because the insertion of the AuthData occurs over a network) additional measures
2516have to be taken. The ADIP protocol ensures confidentiality of the AuthData, while the
2517OSAP session HMAC provides integrity.

2518When ADIP uses the parent key shared secret, care must be taken when that secret is a
2519well known value. In that case, it may be appropriate to wrap the ADIP command in a
2520transport session.

2521When the requestor is sending the AuthData to the TPM, the command requires the
2522authorization of the entity parent. For example, to create a new TPM identity key and set its
2523AuthData requires the AuthData of the TPM Owner. To create a new wrapped key requires
2524the AuthData of the parent key.

2525The creation of a new entity requires the authorization of the entity owner. When the
2526requestor starts the creation process, the creator must establish an OSAP session using the
2527parent of the new entity.

2528For the mandatory XOR encryption algorithm, the creator builds an encryption key using a
2529SHA-1 hash of the OSAP shared secret and a session nonce. The creator XOR encrypts the
2530new AuthData using the encryption key as a one-time pad and sends this encrypted data
2531along with the creation request to the TPM. The TPM decrypts the AuthData using the
2532same OSAP shared secret and session nonce.

2533The XOR encryption algorithm is sufficient for almost all use models. There may be
2534additional use models where a different encryption algorithm would be beneficial. The TPM
2535may support AES as an additional encryption algorithm. The key and IV or counter use the
2536OSAP shared secret and session nonces.

2537The creator believes that the OSAP creates a shared secret known only to the creator and
2538the TPM. The TPM believes that the creator is the entity owner by their knowledge of the
2539parent entity AuthData. The creator believes that the process completed correctly and that
2540the AuthData is correct because the HMAC will only verify with the OSAP shared secret.

2541In the following example, we want to send the previously described command
2542TPM_EXAMPLE to create a new entity. In the example, we assume there is a third input
2543parameter encAuth, and that one of the input parameters is named parentHandle to
2544reference the parent for the new entity (e.g., the SRK and its children).

2545

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP parentHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save parentHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute input parameter newAuth = XOR(entityAuthData, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal parentHandle inArgOne inArgTwo encAuth authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example: decrypt encAuth to entityAuth, create entity and build returnCode. Use the ADIP encryption scheme indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters Terminate the authorization session associated with authHandle

2546

2547 Table 13:f - Example ADIP Session

2548 **End of informative comment**

- 416
25491. The TPM MUST enable ADIP by using the OSAP or DSAP
- 2550 a. When an ordinal Action indicates that OSAP is required for the ADIP protocol (e.g.,
2551 TPM_CreateWrapKey), DSAP shall satisfy that requirement.
 - 2552 b. The upper byte of the entity type indicates the encryption scheme.
 - 2553 c. The TPM internally stores the encryption scheme as part of the session and enforces
2554 the encryption choice on the subsequent use of the session.
 - 2555 d. When TPM_ENTITY_TYPE is used for ordinals other than TPM_OSAP or TPM_DSAP
2556 (i.e., for cases where there is no ADIP encryption action), the TPM_ENTITY_TYPE
2557 upper byte MUST be 0x00.
25582. The TPM MUST destroy the session whenever a new entity AuthData is created.
25593. The TPM MUST encrypt the AuthData for the new entity.
- 2560 a. The TPM MUST support the XOR encryption scheme.
 - 2561 b. The TPM MAY support AES symmetric key encryption schemes.
 - 2562 i. If TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS -> FIPS is TRUE
 - 2563 (1) All encrypted authorizations MUST use a symmetric key encryption scheme.
 - 2564 a. Encrypted AuthData values occur in the following commands
 - 2565 i. TPM_CreateWrapKey
 - 2566 ii. TPM_ChangeAuth
 - 2567 iii. TPM_ChangeAuthOwner
 - 2568 iv. TPM_Seal
 - 2569 v. TPM_Sealx
 - 2570 vi. TPM_MakeIdentity
 - 2571 vii. TPM_CreateCounter
 - 2572 viii. TPM_CMK_CreateKey
 - 2573 ix. TPM_NV_DefineSpace
 - 2574 (1) This ordinal contains a special case where no encryption is used.
 - 2575 x. TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation
 - 2576 xi. TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation
25774. If the entity type indicates XOR encryption for the AuthData secret
- 2578 a. Create X1 the SHA-1 of the concatenation of (authHandle -> sharedSecret ||
2579 authLastNonceEven).
 - 2580 b. Create the decrypted AuthData the XOR of X1 and the encrypted AuthData.
 - 2581 c. If the command ordinal contains a second AuthData2 secret (e.g.
2582 TPM_CreateWrapKey)
 - 2583 i. Create X2 the SHA-1 of the concatenation of (authHandle -> sharedSecret ||
2584 nonceOdd).
 - 2585 ii. Create the decrypted AuthData2 the XOR of X2 and the encrypted AuthData2.

25865. If the entity type indicates symmetric key encryption
- 2587 a. The key for the encryption algorithm is the first bytes of the OSAP shared secret.
 - 2588 i. E.g., For AES128, the key is the first 16 bytes of the OSAP shared secret.
 - 2589 ii. There is no support for AES keys greater than 128 bits.
 - 2590 b. If the entity type indicates CTR mode
 - 2591 i. The initial counter value for AuthData is the first bytes of authLastNonceEven.
 - 2592 (1) E.g., For AES128, the initial counter value is the first 16 bytes of
 - 2593 authLastNonceEven.
 - 2594 ii. If the command ordinal contains a second AuthData2 secret (e.g.
 - 2595 TPM_CreateWrapKey)
 - 2596 (1) The initial counter value for AuthData2 is the first bytes of nonceOdd.
 - 2597 iii. Additional counter values as required are generated by incrementing the counter
 - 2598 value as described in 31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CTR.
 - 2599

2600 **Start of informative comment**

2601 The method of incrementing the counter value is different from that used by some standard
2602 crypto libraries (e.g. openssl, Java JCE) that increment the entire counter value. TPM
2603 users should be aware of this to avoid errors when the counter wraps.

2604 **End of informative comment**

2605

2606**13.5 AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP)**

2607**Start of informative comment**

2608All entities from the Owner to the SRK to individual keys and data blobs have AuthData.
2609This data may need to change at some point in time after the entity creation. The ADCP
2610allows the entity owner to change the AuthData. The entity owner of a wrapped key is the
2611owner of the parent key.

2612A requirement is that the owner must remember the old AuthData. The only mechanism to
2613change the AuthData when the entity owner forgets the current value is to delete the entity
2614and then recreate it.

2615To protect the data from exposure to eavesdroppers or other attackers, the AuthData uses
2616the same encryption mechanism in use during the ADIP.

2617Changing AuthData requires opening two authentication handles. The first handle
2618authenticates the entity owner (or parent) and the right to load the entity. This first handle
2619is an OSAP and supplies the data to encrypt the new AuthData according to the ADIP
2620protocol. The second handle can be either an OIAP or an OSAP, it authorizes access to the
2621entity for which the AuthData is to be changed.

2622The AuthData in use to generate the OSAP shared secret must be the AuthData of the
2623parent of the entity to which the change will be made.

2624When changing the AuthData for the SRK, the first handle OSAP must be setup using the
2625TPM Owner AuthData. This is because the SRK does not have a parent, per se.

2626If the SRKAuth data is known to userA and userB, userA can snoop on userB while userB
2627is changing the AuthData for a child of the SRK, and deduce the child's newAuth.
2628Therefore, if SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and
2629TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish are preferred over TPM_ChangeAuth when changing
2630AuthData for children of the SRK.

2631This applies to all children of the SRK, including TPM identities.

2632**End of informative comment**

26331. Changing AuthData for the TPM SHALL require authorization of the current TPM Owner.

26342. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL require authorization of the TPM Owner.

26353. If SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuth SHOULD NOT be used to change
2636 the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.

26374. All other entities SHALL require authorization of the parent entity.

2638 **13.6 Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP)**

2639 **Start of informative comment**

2640 This is now deprecated. Use the normal change session inside of a transport session with
2641 confidentiality.

2642 This asymmetric change protocol allows the entity owner to change entity authorization,
2643 under the parent's execution authorization, to a value of which the parent has no
2644 knowledge.

2645 In contrast, the TPM_ChangeAuth command uses the parent entity AuthData to create the
2646 shared secret that encrypts the new AuthData for an entity. This creates a situation where
2647 the parent entity ALWAYS knows the AuthData for entities in the tree below the parent.
2648 There may be instances where this knowledge is not a good policy.

2649 This asymmetric change process requires two commands and the use of an authorization
2650 session.

2651 **End of informative comment**

2652 1. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL involve authorization by the TPM Owner.

2653 2. If SRKAuth is a well known value,

2654 a. TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish SHOULD be used to
2655 change the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.

2656 3. All other entities SHALL involve authorization of the parent entity.

2657**14. FIPS 140 Physical Protection**

2658**Start of informative comment**

2659The FIPS 140-2 program provides assurance that a cryptographic device performs properly.
2660It is appropriate for TPM vendors to attempt to obtain FIPS 140-2 certification.

2661The TPM design should be such that the TPM vendor has the opportunity of obtaining FIPS
2662140-2 certification.

2663**End of informative comment**

2664**14.1 TPM Profile for FIPS Certification**

2665**Start of informative comment**

2666The FIPS mode of the TPM does require some changes over the normal TPM. These changes
2667are listed here such that there is a central point of determining the necessary FIPS changes.

2668**Key creation and use**

2669TPM_LoadKey, TPM_CMK_CreateKey and TPM_CreateWrapKey changed to disallow the
2670creation or loading of TPM_AUTH_NEVER, legacy and keys less than 1024 bits.
2671TPM_MakeIdentity changed to disallow TPM_AUTH_NEVER.

2672**End of informative comment**

26731. Each TPM Protected Capability MUST be designed such that some profile of the
2674 Capability is capable of obtaining FIPS 140-2 certification

2675 **15. Maintenance**

2676 **Start of informative comment**

2677 The maintenance feature is a vendor-specific feature, and its implementation is vendor-
2678 specific. The implementation must, however, meet the minimum security requirements so
2679 that implementations of the maintenance feature do not result in security weaknesses.

2680 There is no requirement that the maintenance feature is available, but if it is implemented,
2681 then the requirements must be met.

2682 The maintenance feature described in the specification is an example only, and not the only
2683 mechanism that a manufacturer could implement that meets these requirements.

2684 Maintenance is different from backup/migration, because maintenance provides for the
2685 migration of both migratory and non-migratory data. Maintenance is an optional TPM
2686 function, but if a TPM enables maintenance, the maintenance capabilities in this
2687 specification are mandatory – no other migration capabilities shall be used. Maintenance
2688 necessarily involves the manufacturer of a Subsystem.

2689 When maintaining computer systems, it is sometimes the case that a manufacturer or its
2690 representative needs to replace a Subsystem containing a TPM. Some manufacturers
2691 consider it a requirement that there be a means of doing this replacement without the loss
2692 of the non-migrational keys held by the original TPM.

2693 The owner and users of TCG platforms need assurance that the data within protected
2694 storage is adequately protected against interception by third parties or the manufacturer.

2695 This process MUST only be performed between two platforms of the same manufacturer and
2696 model. If the maintenance feature is supported, this section defines the required functions
2697 defined at a high level. The final function definitions and entire maintenance process is left
2698 to the manufacturer to define within the constraints of these high level functions.

2699 Any maintenance process must have certain properties. Specifically, any migration to a
2700 replacement Subsystem must require collaboration between the Owner of the existing
2701 Subsystem and the manufacturer of the existing Subsystem. Further, the procedure must
2702 have adequate safeguards to prevent a non-migrational key being transferred to multiple
2703 Subsystems.

2704 The maintenance capabilities TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive and
2705 TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive enable the transfer of all Protected Storage data from a
2706 Subsystem containing a first TPM (TPM₁) to a Subsystem containing a second TPM (TPM₂):

2707 A manufacturer places a public key in non-volatile storage into its TPMs at manufacture
2708 time.

2709 The Owner of TPM₁ uses TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive to create a maintenance archive
2710 that enables the migration of all data held in Protected Storage by TPM₁. The Owner of TPM₁
2711 must provide his or her authorization to the Subsystem. The TPM then creates the
2712 TPM_MIGRATE_ASYMKEY structure and follows the process defined.

2713 The XOR process prevents the manufacturer from ever obtaining plaintext TPM₁ data.

2714 The additional random data provides a means to assure that a maintenance process cannot
2715 subvert archive data and hide such subversion.

2716The random mask can be generated by two methods, either using the TPM RNG or MGF1 on
2717the TPM Owners AuthData.

2718The manufacturer takes the maintenance blob, decrypts it with its private key, and satisfies
2719itself that the data bundle represents data from that Subsystem manufactured by that
2720manufacturer. Then the manufacturer checks the endorsement certificate of TPM₂ and
2721verifies that it represents a platform to which data from TPM₁ may be moved.

2722The manufacturer dispatches two messages.

2723The first message is made available to CAs, and is a revocation of the TPM₁ endorsement
2724certificate.

2725The second message is sent to the Owner of TPM₂, which will communicate the SRK,
2726tpmProof and the manufacturer's permission to install the maintenance blob only on TPM₂

2727The Owner uses TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive to install the archive copy into TPM₂, and
2728overwrite the existing TPM₂-SRK and TPM₂-tpmProof in TPM₂. TPM₂ overwrites TPM₂-SRK
2729with TPM₁-SRK, and overwrites TPM₂-tpmProof with TPM₁-tpmProof.

2730Note that the command TPM_KillMaintenanceFeature prevents the operation of
2731TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive and TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive. This enables an Owner
2732to block maintenance (and hence the migration of non-migratory data) either to or from a
2733TPM.

2734It is required that a manufacturer takes steps that prevent further access of migrated data
2735by TPM₁. This may be achieved by deleting the existing Owner from TPM₁, for example.

2736For the manufacturer to validate that the maintenance blob is coming from a valid TPM, the
2737manufacturer can require that a TPM identity sign the maintenance blob. The identity
2738would be from a CA under the control of the manufacturer and hence the manufacturer
2739would be satisfied that the blob is from a valid TPM.

2740**End of informative comment**

27411. The maintenance feature MUST ensure that the information can be on only one TPM at
2742 a time. Maintenance MUST ensure that at no time the process will expose a shielded
2743 location. Maintenance MUST require the active participation of the Owner.

27442. Any migration of non-migratory data protected by a Subsystem SHALL require the
2745 cooperation of both the Owner of that non-migratory data and the manufacturer of that
2746 Subsystem. That manufacturer SHALL NOT cooperate in a maintenance process unless
2747 the manufacturer is satisfied that non-migratory data will exist in exactly one
2748 Subsystem. A TPM SHALL NOT provide capabilities that support migration of non-
2749 migratory data unless those capabilities are described in the TCG specification.

27503. The maintenance feature MUST move the following

27514. TPM_KEY for SRK. The maintenance process will reset the SRK AuthData to match the
2752 TPM Owners AuthData

27535. TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof

27546. TPM Owner's authorization

2755 **15.1 Field Upgrade**

2756**Start of informative comment**

2757 A TPM, once in the field, may need to update the protected capabilities. This command,
2758 which is optional, provides the mechanism to perform the update.

2759 The goal is that field upgrade should only affect protected capabilities and not shielded
2760 location, so that a patch can be applied without loss of user data. It is understood that this
2761 goal may not be achievable in all cases.

2762 **End of informative comment**

2763 The TPM SHOULD have provisions for upgrading the subsystem after shipment from the
2764 manufacturer. If provided the mechanism MUST implement the following guidelines:

2765 1. The upgrade mechanisms in the TPM MUST not require the TPM to hold a global secret.
2766 The definition of global secret is a secret value shared by more than one TPM.

2767 2. The TPM is not allowed to pre-store or use unique identifiers in the TPM for the purpose
2768 of field upgrade. The TPM MUST NOT use the endorsement key for identification or
2769 encryption in the upgrade process. The upgrade process MAY use a TPM Identity (AIK) to
2770 deliver upgrade information to specific TPM devices.

2771 3. The upgrade process SHOULD only change protected capabilities. The upgrade process
2772 SHOULD NOT change shielded locations.

2773 4. The upgrade process SHOULD only access data in shielded locations where this data is
2774 necessary to validate the TPM Owner, validate the TPME and manipulate the blob

2775 5. The TPM MUST conform to the TCG specification, protection profiles and security targets
2776 after the upgrade. The upgrade MAY NOT decrease the security values from the original
2777 security target.

2778 6. The security target used to evaluate this TPM MUST include this command in the TOE.

2779**16. Proof of Locality**

2780**Start of informative comment**

2781When a platform is designed with a trusted process, the trusted process may wish to
2782communicate with the TPM and indicate that the command is coming from the trusted
2783process. The definition of a trusted process is a platform specific issue.

2784The commands that the trusted process sends to the TPM are the normal TPM commands
2785with a modifier that indicates that the trusted process initiated the command. The TPM
2786accepts the command as coming from the trusted process merely because the modifier is
2787set. The TPM itself is not responsible for how the signal is asserted; only that it honors the
2788assertions. The TPM cannot verify the validity of the modifier.

2789The definition of the modifier is a platform specific issue. Depending on the platform, the
2790modifier could be a special bus cycle or additional input pins on the TPM. The assumption
2791is that spoofing the modifier to the TPM requires more than just a simple hardware attack,
2792but would require expertise and possibly special hardware. One example would be special
2793cycles on the LPC bus that inform the TPM it is under the control of a process on the PC
2794platform.

2795To allow for multiple mechanisms and for finer grained reporting, the TPM will include 4
2796locality modifiers. These four modifiers allow the platform specific specification to properly
2797indicate exactly what is occurring and for TPM's to properly respond to locality.

2798**End of informative comment**

27991. The TPM modifies the receipt of a command and indicates that the trusted process sent
2800 the command when the TPM determines that the modifier is on. The modifier **MUST** only
2801 affect the individual command just received and **MUST NOT** affect any other commands.
2802 However, TPM_ExecuteTransport **MUST** propagate the modifier to the wrapped
2803 command.

28042. A TPM platform specific specification **MAY** indicate the presence of a maximum of 4 local
2805 modifiers. The modifier indication uses the TPM_MODIFIER_INDICATOR data type.

28063. The received modifier **MUST** indicate a single level.

28074. The definition of the trusted source is in the platform specific specification.

28085. For ease in reading this specification the indication that the TPM has received any
2809 modifier will be LOCAL_MOD = TRUE.

2810 **17. Monotonic Counter**

2811 **Start of informative comment**

2812 The monotonic counter provides an ever-increasing incremental value. The TPM must
2813 support at least 4 concurrent counters. Implementations inside the TPM may create 4
2814 unique counters or there may be one counter with pointers to keep track of the pointers
2815 current value. A naming convention to allow for unambiguous reference to the various
2816 components the following terms are in use:

2817 Internal Base – This is the main counter. It is in use internally by the TPM and is not
2818 directly accessible by any outside process.

2819 External Counter – A counter in use by external processes. This could be related to the
2820 main counter via pointers and difference values or it could be a totally unique value. The
2821 value of an external counter is not affected by any use, increment or deletion of any other
2822 external counter.

2823 Max Value – The max count value of all counters (internal and external). So if there were 3
2824 external counters having values of 10, 15 and 201 and the internal base having a value of
2825 201 then Max Value is 201. In the same example if the internal base was 502 then Max
2826 Value would be 502.

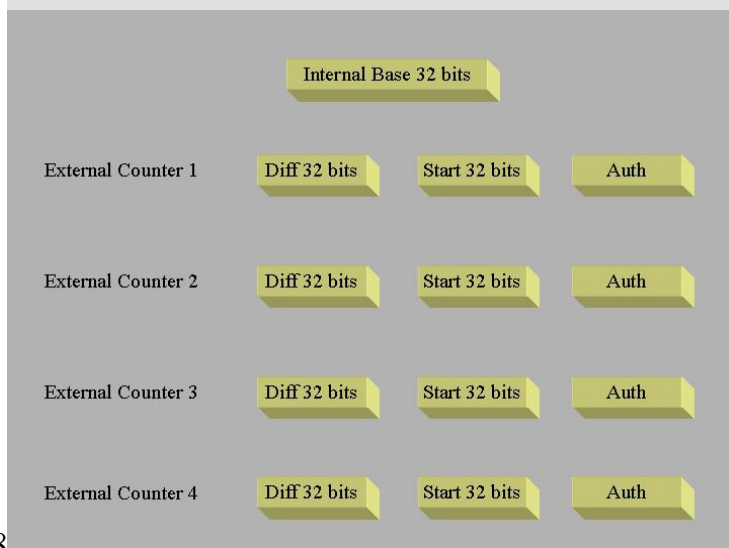
2827 The external counter must allow for 7 years of increments every 5 seconds without causing
2828 a hardware failure. The TPM may create a throttling mechanism that limits the ability to
2829 increment an external counter within a certain time range. The output of the counter is a
2830 32-bit value.

2831 To create an external counter requires TPM Owner authorization. To increment an external
2832 counter the command must pass authorization to use the counter.

2833 External counters can be tagged with a short text string to facilitate counter administration.

2834 Manufacturers are free to implement the monotonic counter using any mechanism.

2835 To illustrate the counters and base the following example is in use. This mechanism uses
2836 two saving values (diff and start), however this is only an example and not meant to indicate
2837 any specific implementation.



2838

2839The internal base (IB) always moves forward and can never be reset. IB drives all external
2840counters on the machine.

2841The purpose of the following example is to show the two external counters always moving
2842forward independent of the other and how the IB moves forward also.

2843Starting condition is that IB is at 22 and no other external counters are active.

2844Start external counter A

2845 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 23

2846 Assign start value of A to 23 (or Max Value)

2847 Assign difference of A to 23 (we always start at current value of IB)

2848 Assign a handle for A

2849Increment A 5 times

2850 IB is now 28

2851Request current A value

2852 Return $28 = 28 \text{ (IB)} + 23 \text{ (difference)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

2853 Counter A has gone from the start of 23 to 28 incremented 5 times.

2854TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

2855Start Counter B

2856 Save A difference $28 = 23 \text{ (old difference)} + 28 \text{ (IB)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

2857 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 29

2858 Set start value of B to 29 (or Max Value)

2859 Assign difference of B to 29

2860 Assign handle for B

2861Increment B 8 times

2862 IB is now 37

2863Request B value

2864 Return $37 = 37 \text{ (IB)} + 29 \text{ (difference)} - 29 \text{ (start value)}$

2865TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

2866Increment A

2867 Store B difference (37)

2868 Load A start value of 37

2869 Increment IB to 38

2870Return A value

2871 Return $29 = 38 \text{ (IB)} + 28 \text{ (difference)} - 37 \text{ (start value)}$

2872

2873 Notice that A has gone from 28 to 29 which is correct, while B is at 37. Depending on the
2874 order of increments A may pass B or it may always be less than B.

2875 **End of informative comment**

2876 1. The counter MUST be designed to not wear out in the first 7 years of operation. The
2877 counter MUST be able to increment at least once every 5 seconds. The TPM, in response
2878 to operations that would violate these counter requirements, MAY throttle the counter
2879 usage (cause a delay in the use of the counter) or return an error.

2880 2. The TPM MUST support at least 4 concurrent counters.

2881 3. The establishment of a new counter MUST prevent the reuse of any previous counter
2882 value. I.E. if the TPM has 3 counters and the max value of a current counter is at 36
2883 then the establishment of a new counter would start at 37.

2884 4. After a successful TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) the first successful TPM_IncrementCounter
2885 sets the counter handle. Any attempt to issue TPM_IncrementCounter with a different
2886 handle MUST fail.

2887 5. TPM_CreateCounter does NOT set the counter handle.

2888 **18. Transport Protection**

2889 **Start of informative comment**

2890The creation of sessions allows for the grouping of a set of commands into a session. The
2891session provides a log of all commands and can provide confidentiality of the commands
2892using the session.

2893Session establishment creates a shared secret and then uses the shared secret to authorize
2894and protect commands sent to the TPM using the session. The shared secret is passed to
2895the TPM using an asymmetric encryption key. For best security, the caller should certify
2896that the key is never available outside the TPM.

2897After establishing the session, the caller uses the session to wrap a command to execute.
2898The user of the transport session can wrap any command except for commands that would
2899create nested transport sessions.

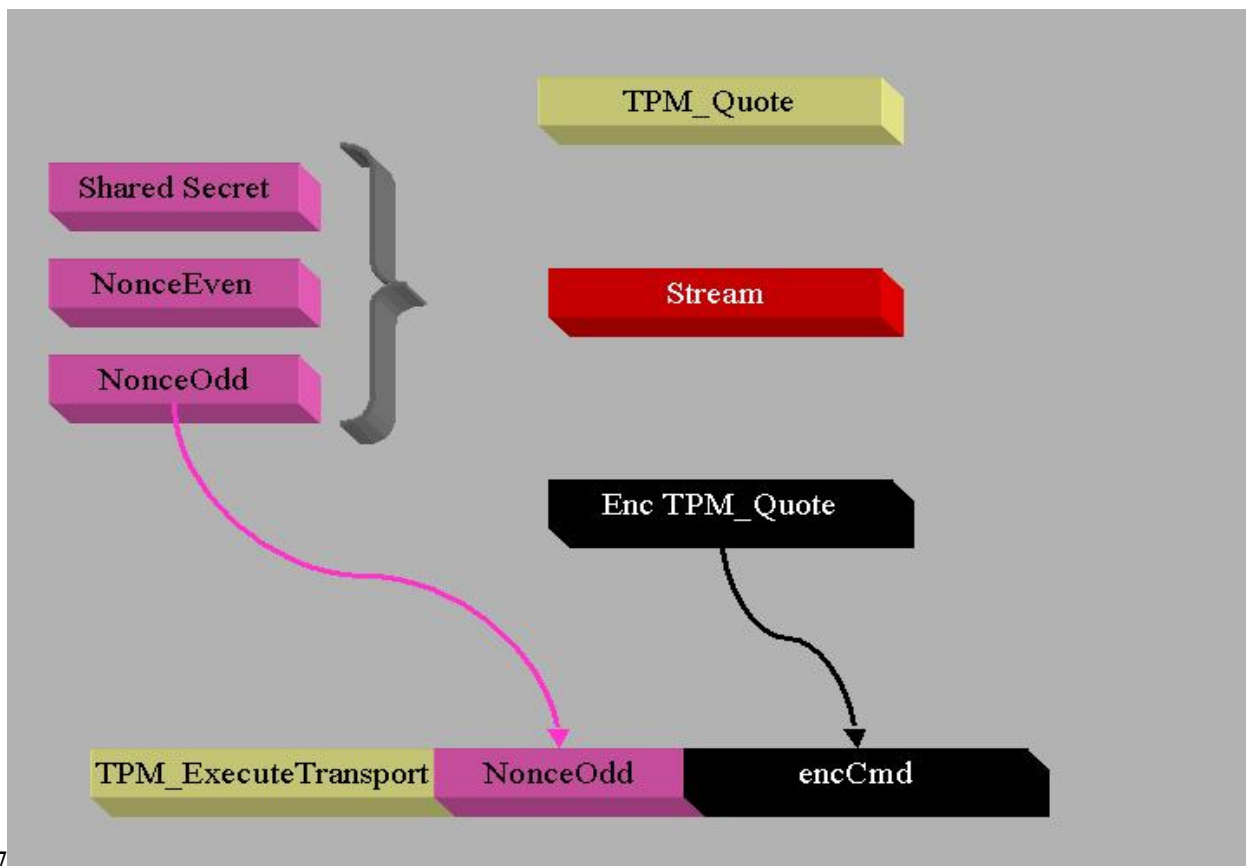
2900The log of executed commands uses a structure that includes the parameters and current
2901tick count. The session log provides a record of each command using the session.

2902The transport session uses the same rolling nonce protocol that authorization sessions use.
2903This protocol defines two nonces for each command sent to the TPM; nonceOdd provided by
2904the caller and nonceEven generated by the TPM.

2905For confidentiality, the caller can use the MGF1 function to create an XOR string the same
2906size as the command to execute. The inputs to the MGF1 function are the shared secret,
2907nonceOdd and nonceEven. A symmetric key encryption algorithm can also be specified.

2908There is no explicit close session as the caller can use the continueSession flag set to false
2909to end a session. The caller can also call the sign session log, which also ends the session. If
2910the caller loses track of which sessions are active the caller should use the flush
2911commands to regain control of the TPM resources.

2912For an attacker to successfully break the encryption the attacker must be able to determine
2913from a few bits what an entire SHA-1 output was. This is equivalent to breaking SHA-1. The
2914reason that the attacker will know some bits is that the commands are in a known format.
2915This then allows the attacker to determine what the XOR bits were. Knowledge of 159 bits of
2916the XOR stream does not provide any greater than 50% probability of knowing the 160th bit.



2917
2918 This picture shows the protection of a TPM_Quote command. Previously executed was
2919 session establishment. The nonces in use for the TPM_Quote have no relationship with the
2920 nonces that are in use for the TPM_ExecuteTransport command.

2921 **End of informative comment**

- 2922 1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of one transport session.
- 2923 2. The TPM MUST NOT support the nesting of transport sessions. The definition of nesting
2924 is attempting to execute a wrapped command that is a transport session command. So
2925 for example when executing TPM_ExecuteTransport the wrapped command MUST not be
2926 TPM_ExecuteTransport.
- 2927 3. The TPM MUST ensure that if transport logging is active that the inclusion of the tick
2928 count in the session log does not provide information that would make a timing attack
2929 on the operations using the session more successful.
- 2930 4. The transport session MAY be exclusive. Any command executed outside of the exclusive
2931 transport session MUST cause the invalidation of the exclusive transport session.
 - 2932 a. The TPM_ExecuteTransport command specifying the exclusive transport session is
2933 the only command that does not terminate the exclusive session.
- 2934 5. It MAY be ineffective to wrap TPM_SaveState in a transport session. Since the TPM MAY
2935 include transport sessions in the saved state, the saved state MAY be invalidated by the
2936 wrapping TPM_ExecuteTransport.

2937**18.1 Transport encryption and authorization**

2938**Start of informative comment**

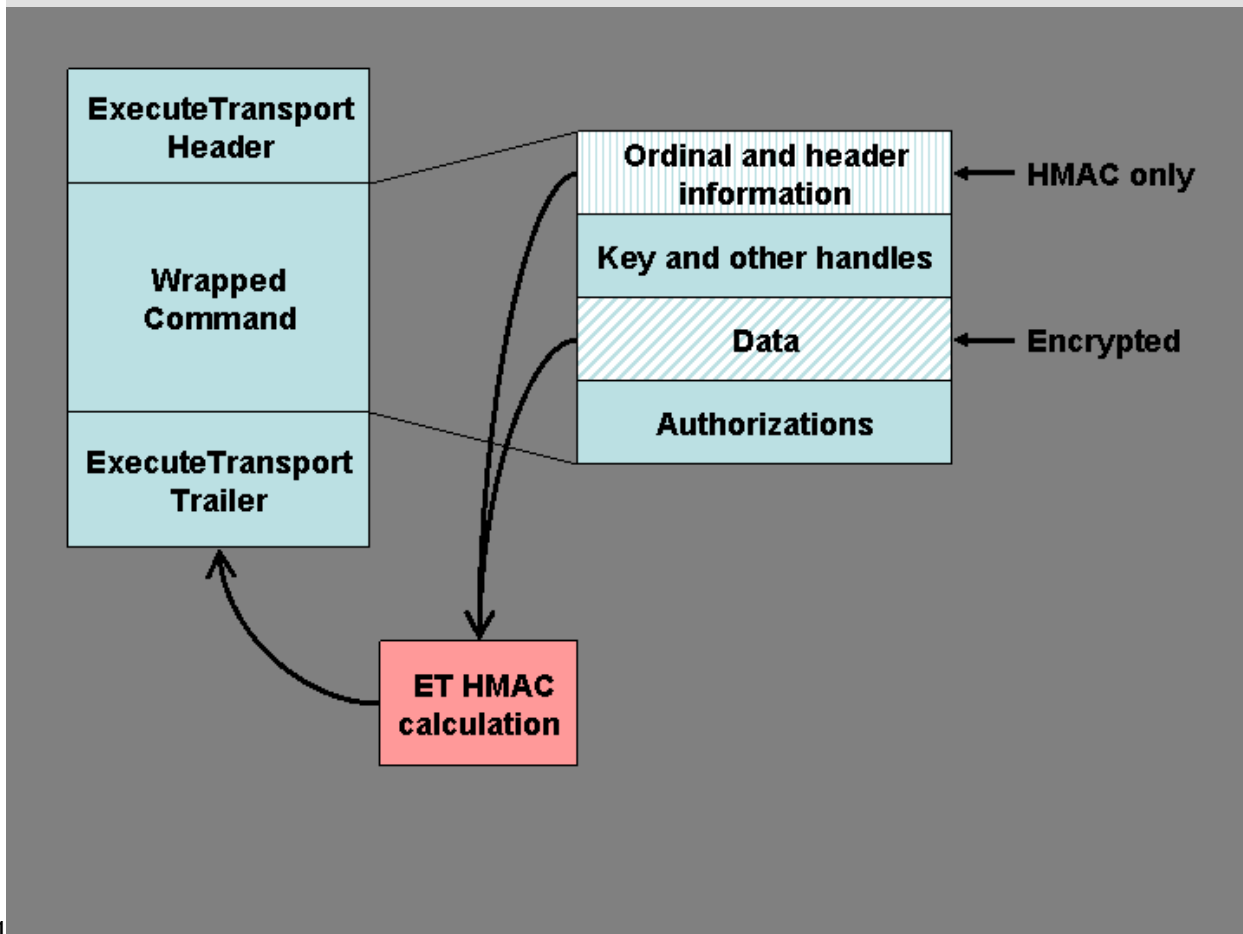
2939The confidentiality of the transport protection is provided by a encrypting the wrapped
2940command. Encryption of various items in the wrapped command makes resource
2941management of a TPM impossible. For this reason, encryption of the entire command is not
2942possible. In addition to the encryption issue, there are difficulties with creating the HMAC
2943for the TPM_ExecuteTransport authorization.

2944The solution to these problems is to provide limited encryption and HMAC information.

2945The HMAC will only include two areas from the wrapped command, the command header
2946information up to the handles, and the data after the handles. The format of all TPM
2947commands is such that all handles are in the data stream prior to the payload or data. After
2948the data comes the authorization information. To enable resource management, the HMAC
2949for TPM_ExecuteTransport only includes the ordinal, header information and the data. The
2950HMAC does not include handles and the authorization handles and nonces.

2951The exception is TPM_OwnerReadInternalPub, which uses fixed value key handles that are
2952included in the encryption and HMAC calculation.

2953



2954

2955A more exact representation of the execute transport command would be the following

2956 *****
2957 * TAGet | LENet | ORDet | wrappedCmdSize | wrappedCmd | AUTHet *
2958 *****
2959

2960 wrappedCmd looks like

2961 *****
2962 * TAGw | LENw | ORDw | HANDLESw(o) | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
2963 *****

2964 A more exact representation of the execute transport response would be the following

2965 *****
2966 * TAGet | LENet | RCet | ... | wrappedRspSize | wrappedRsp | AUTHet *
2967 *****
2968

2969 wrappedRsp looks like

2970 *****
2971 * TAGw | LENw | RCw | HANDLESw(o) | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
2972 *****
2973

2974 The calculation for AUTHet takes as the data component of the HMAC calculation the
2975 concatenation of ORDw and DATAw. A normal HMAC calculation would have taken the
2976 entire wrappedCmd value but for the executeTransport calculation only the above two
2977 values are active. This does require the executeTransport command to parse the
2978 wrappedCmd to find the appropriate values.

2979 The data for the command HMAC calculation is the following:

2980 H1 = SHA-1 (ORDw || DATAw)

2981 inParamDigest = SHA-1 (ORDet || wrappedCmdSize || H1)

2982 AUTHet = HMAC (inParamDigest || lastNonceEven(et) || nonceOdd(et) || continue(et))

2983 The data for the response HMAC calculation is the following:

2984 H2 = SHA-1 (RCw || ORDw || DATAw)

2985 outParamDigest = SHA-1 (RCet || ORDet || currentTicks || locality || wrappedRspSize ||
2986 H1)

2987 AUTHet = HMAC (outParamDigest || nonceEven(et) || nonceOdd(et) || continue(et))

2988 DATAw is the unencrypted data. wrappedCmdSize and wrappedRspSize are the actual size
2989 of the DATAw area and not the size of H1 or H2.

2990 **End of informative comment**

2991 The TPM MUST release a transport session and all information related to the session when:

2992 1. TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned is executed

2993 2. TPM_ExecuteTransport is executed with continueTransSession set to FALSE

2994 3. Any failure of the integrity check during execution of TPM_ExecuteTransport

2995 4. If the session has TPM_TRANSPORT_LOG set and the TPM tick session is interrupted for
2996 any reason. This is due to the return of tick values without the nonces associated with
2997 the session.

29985. The TPM executes some command that deactivates the TPM or removes the TPM Owner
2999 or EK.

3000**18.1.1 MGF1 parameters**

3001**Start of informative comment**

3002MGF1 provides the confidentiality for the transport session. MGF1 is a function from PKCS
30031 version 2.0. This function provides a mechanism to distribute entropy over a large
3004sequence. The sequence provides a value to XOR over the message. This in effect creates a
3005stream cipher but not one that is available for bulk encryption.

3006Transport confidentiality uses MGF1 as a stream cipher and obtains the entropy for each
3007message from the following three parameters; nonceOdd, nonceEven and session authData.

3008It is imperative that the stream cipher not use the same XOR sequence at any time. The
3009following illustrates how the sequence changes for each message (both input and output).

3010M1Input – N2, N1, sessionSecret)

3011M1Output – N4, N1, sessionSecret)

3012M2Input – N4, N3, sessionSecret)

3013M2Output – N6, N3, sessionSecret)

3014There is an issue with this sequence. If the caller does not change N1 to N3 between
3015M1Output and M2Input then the same sequence will be generated. The TPM does not
3016enforce the requirement to change this value so it is possible to leak information.

3017The fix for this is to add one more parameter, the direction. So the sequence is now this:

3018M1Input – N2, N1, “in”, sessionSecret)

3019M1Output – N4, N1, “out”, sessionSecret)

3020M2Input – N4, N3, “in”, sessionSecret)

3021M2Output – N6, N3, “out”, sessionSecret)

3022Where “in” indicates the in direction and “out” indicates the out direction.

3023Notice the calculation for M1Output uses “out” and M2Input uses “in”, so if the caller
3024makes a mistake and does not change nonceOdd, the sequence will still be different.

3025nonceEven is under control of the TPM and is always changing, so there is no need to worry
3026about nonceEven not changing.

3027**End of informative comment**

3028**18.1.2 HMAC calculation**

3029**Start of informative comment**

3030The HMAC calculation for transports presents some issues with what should and should
3031not be in the calculation. The idea is to create a calculation for the wrapped command and
3032add that to the wrapper.

3033So the data area for a wrapped command is not entirely HMAC'd like a normal command
3034would be.

3035 The process is to calculate the inParamDigest of the unencrypted wrapped command
3036 according to the normal rules of command HMAC calculations. Then use that value as the
3037 3S parameter in the calculation. 2S is the actual wrapped command size, and not the size
3038 of inParamDigest.

3039 Example using a wrapped TPM_LoadKey command

3040 Calculate the SHA-1 value for the TPM_LoadKey command (ordinal and data) as per the
3041 normal HMAC rules. Take the digest and use that value as 3S for the
3042 TPM_ExecuteTransport HMAC calculation.

3043 **End of informative comment**

3044 **18.1.3 Transport log creation**

3045 **Start of informative comment**

3046 The log of information that a transport session creates needs a mechanism to tie any keys
3047 in use during the session to the session. As the HMAC and encryption for the command
3048 specifically exclude handles, there is no direct way to create the binding.

3049 When creating the transport input log, if the handle(s) points to a key or keys, the public
3050 keys are digested into the log. The session owner knows the value of any keys in use and
3051 hence can still create a log that shows the values used by the log and can validate the
3052 session.

3053 **End of informative comment**

3054 **18.1.4 Additional Encryption Mechanisms**

3055 **Start of informative comment**

3056 The TPM can optionally implement alternate algorithms for the encryption of commands
3057 sent to the TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The designation of the algorithm uses the
3058 TPM_ALGORITHM_ID and TPM_ENC_SCHEME elements of the TPM_TRANSPORT_PUBLIC
3059 parameter of the TPM_EstablishTransport command.

3060 The anticipation is that AES will be supported by various TPM's. Symmetric algorithms
3061 have options available to them like key size, block size and operating mode. When using an
3062 algorithm other than MGF1 the algorithm and scheme must specify these options.

3063 **End of informative comment**

3064 1. The TPM MAY support other symmetric algorithms for the confidentiality requirement in
3065 TPM_EstablishTransport

3066 **18.2 Transport Error Handling**

3067 **Start of informative comment**

3068 With the transport hiding the actual execution of commands and the transport capable of
3069 generating errors, rules must be established to allow for the errors and the results of
3070 commands to be properly passed to TPM callers.

3071 **End of informative comment**

3072 1. There are 3 error cases:

30732. C1 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the transport package at
3074 the TPM. In this case, the wrapped command has not been sent to the command
3075 decoder. Errors occurring during C1 are sent back to the caller as a response to the
3076 TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The error response does not have confidentiality.

30773. C2 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the wrapped command.
3078 This results in an error response from the command. The session returns the error
3079 response according to the attributes of the session.

30804. C3 is the case where an error occurs after the wrapped command has completed
3081 processing and the TPM is preparing the response to the TPM_ExecuteTransport
3082 command. In this case, where the TPM does have an internal error, the TPM has no
3083 choice but to return the error as in C1. This however hides the results of the wrapped
3084 command. If the wrapped command completed successfully then there are session
3085 nonces that are being returned to the caller that are lost. The loss of these nonces
3086 causes the caller to be unsure of the state of the TPM and requires the reestablishment
3087 of sessions and keys.

3088**18.3 Exclusive Transport Sessions**

3089**Start of informative comment**

3090The caller may establish an exclusive session with the TPM. When an exclusive session is
3091running, execution of any command other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or
3092TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting the exclusive session causes the abnormal
3093invalidation of the exclusive transport session. Invalidation means that the handle is no
3094longer valid and all subsequent attempts to use the handle return an error.

3095The design for the exclusive session provides an assurance that no other command
3096executed on the TPM. It is not a lock to prevent other operations from occurring. Therefore,
3097the caller is responsible for ensuring no interruption of the sequence of commands using
3098the TPM.

3099**One exclusive session**

3100The TPM only supports one exclusive session at a time. There is no nesting or other
3101commands possible. The TPM maintains an internal flag that indicates the existence of an
3102exclusive session.

3103**TSS responsibilities**

3104It is the responsibility of the TSS (or other controlling software) to ensure that only
3105commands using the session reach the TPM. As the purpose of the session is to show that
3106nothing else occurred on the TPM during the session, the TSS should control access to the
3107TPM and prevent any other uses of the TPM. The TSS design must take into account the
3108possibility of exclusive session handle invalidation.

3109**Sleep states**

3110Exclusive sessions as defined here do not work across TPM_SaveState and
3111TPM_Startup(ST_STATE) invocations. To have this sequence work properly there would
3112need to be exceptions to allowing only TPM_ExecuteTransport and
3113TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned in an exclusive session. The requirement for these exceptions
3114would come from the attempt of the TSS to understand the current state of the TPM.
3115Commands like TPM_GetCapability and others would have to execute to inform the TSS as

3116 to the internal state of the TPM. For this reason, there are no exceptions to the rule and the
3117 exclusive session does not remain active across a TPM_SaveState command.

3118 **End of informative comment**

3119 1. The TPM MUST support only one exclusive transport session

3120 2. The TPM MUST invalidate the exclusive transport session upon the receipt of any
3121 command other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting
3122 the exclusive session.

3123 a. Invalidation includes the release of any resources assigned to the session

3124 **18.4 Transport Audit Handling**

3125 **Start of informative comment**

3126 Auditing of TPM_ExecuteTransport occurs as any other command that may require
3127 auditing. There are two entries in the log, one for input one for output. The execution of the
3128 wrapped command can create an anomaly in the log.

3129 Assume that both TPM_ExecuteTransport and the wrapped commands require auditing, the
3130 audit flow would look like the following:

3131 TPM_ExecuteTransport input parameters

3132 wrapped command input parameters

3133 wrapped command output parameters

3134 TPM_ExecuteTransport output parameters

3135 **End of informative comment**

3136 1. Audit failures are reported using the AUTHFAIL error commands and reflect the success
3137 or failure of the wrapped command.

3138 **18.4.1 Auditing of wrapped commands**

3139 **Start of informative comment**

3140 Auditing provides information to allow an auditor to recreate the operations performed.
3141 Confidentiality on the transport channel is to hide what operations occur. These two
3142 features are in conflict. According to the TPM design philosophy, the TPM Owner takes
3143 precedence.

3144 For a command sent on a transport session, with the session using confidentiality and the
3145 command requiring auditing, the TPM will execute the command however the input and
3146 output parameters for the command are ignored.

3147 **End of informative comment**

3148 1. When the wrapped command requires auditing and the transport session specifies
3149 encryption, the TPM MUST perform the audit. However, when computing the audit
3150 digest:

3151 a. For input, only the ordinal is audited.

3152 b. For output, only the ordinal and return code are audited.

3153 **19. Audit Commands**

3154 **Start of informative comment**

3155 To allow the TPM Owner the ability to determine that certain operations on the TPM have
3156 been executed, auditing of commands is possible. The audit value is a digest held internally
3157 to the TPM and externally as a log of all audited commands. With the log held externally to
3158 the TPM, the internal digest must allow the log auditor to determine the presence of attacks
3159 against the log. The evidence of tampering may not provide evidence of the type of attack
3160 mounted against the log.

3161 The TPM cannot enforce any protections on the external log. It is the responsibility of the
3162 external log owner to properly maintain and protect the log.

3163 The TPM provides mechanisms for the external log maintainer to resynchronize the internal
3164 digest and external logs.

3165 The Owner has the ability to set which functions generate an audit event and to change
3166 which functions generate the event at any time.

3167 The status of the audit generation is not sensitive information and so the command to
3168 determine the status of the audit generation is not an owner authorized command.

3169 It is important to note the difference between auditing and the logging of transport sessions.
3170 The audit log provides information on the execution of specific commands. There will be a
3171 very limited number of audited commands, most likely those commands that provide
3172 identities and control of the TPM. Commands such as TPM_Unseal would not be audited.
3173 They would use the logging functions of a transport session.

3174 The auditing of an ordinal happens in a two-step process. The first step involves auditing
3175 the receipt of the command and the input parameters; the second step involves auditing the
3176 response to the command and the output parameters.

3177 There is a requirement to enable verification of the external audit log both during a power
3178 session and across power sessions and to enable detection of partial or inconsistent audit
3179 logs throughout the lifetime of a TPM.

3180 A TPM will hold an internal record consisting of a non-volatile counter (that increments
3181 once per session, when the first audit event of that session occurs) and a digest (that holds
3182 the digest of the current session). Most probably, the audit digest will be volatile. Note,
3183 however, that nothing in this specification prevents the use of a non-volatile audit digest.
3184 This arrangement of counter and digest is advantageous because it is easier to build a high
3185 endurance non-volatile counter than a high endurance non-volatile digest. This
3186 arrangement is insufficient, however, because the truncation of an audit log of any session
3187 is possible without trace. It is therefore necessary to perform an explicit close on the audit
3188 session. If there is no record of a close-audit event in an audit session, anything could have
3189 happened after the last audit event in the audit log. The essence of a typical TPM audit
3190 recording mechanism is therefore:

3191 The TPM contains a volatile digest used like a PCR, where the “integrity metrics” are digests
3192 of command parameters in the current audit session.

3193 An audit session opens when the volatile “PCR” digest is “extended” from its NULL state.
3194 This occurs whenever an audited command is executed AND no audit session currently

3195 exists, and in no other circumstances. When an audit session opens, a non-volatile counter
3196 is automatically incremented.

3197 An audit session closes when a TPM receives TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned with a closeAudit
3198 parameter asserted. An audit session must be considered closed if the value in the volatile
3199 digest is invalid (for whatever reason).

3200 TPM_GetCapability should report the effect of TPM_Startup on the volatile digest. (TPMs
3201 may initialize the volatile digest on the first audit command after TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR),
3202 or on the first audit command after any version of TPM_Startup, or may be independent of
3203 TPM_Startup.)

3204 When the TPM signs its audit digest, it signs the concatenation of the non-volatile counter
3205 and the volatile digest, and exports the value of the non-volatile counter, plus the value of
3206 the volatile digest, plus the value of the signature.

3207 If the audit digest is initialized by TPM_Startup(ST_STATE), then it may be useless to audit
3208 the TPM_SaveState ordinal. Any command after TPM_SaveState MAY invalidate the saved
3209 state. If authorization sessions are part of the saved state, TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned will
3210 most likely invalidate the state as it changes the preserved authorization session nonce. It
3211 may therefore be impossible to get the audit results.

3212 The system designer needs to ensure that the selected TPM can handle the specific
3213 environment and avoid burnout of the audit monotonic counter.

3214 **End of informative comment**

3215 1. Audit functionality is optional

3216 a. If the platform specific specification requires auditing, the specification SHALL
3217 indicate how the TPM implements audit

3218 2. The TPM MUST maintain an audit monotonic count that is only available for audit
3219 purposes.

3220 a. The increment of this audit counter is under the sole control of the TPM and is not
3221 usable for other count purposes.

3222 b. This monotonic count MUST BE incremented by one whenever the audit digest is
3223 “extended” from a NULL state.

3224 3. The TPM MUST maintain an audit digest.

3225 a. This digest MUST be set to all zeros upon the execution of
3226 TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned with a TRUE value of closeAudit provided that the
3227 signing key is an identity key.

3228 b. This digest MAY be set to all zeros on TPM_Startup[ST_CLEAR] or
3229 TPM_Startup[ST_STATE].

3230 c. When an audited command is executed, this register MUST be extended with the
3231 digest of that command.

3232 4. Each command ordinal has an indicator in non-volatile TPM memory that indicates if
3233 execution of the command will generate an audit event. The setting of the ordinal
3234 indicator MUST be under control of the TPM Owner.

3235**19.1 Audit Monotonic Counter**

3236**Start of informative comment**

3237The audit monotonic counter (AMC) performs the task of sequencing audit logs across audit
3238sessions. The AMC must have no other uses other than the audit log.

3239The TPM and platform should be matched such that the expected AMC endurance matches
3240the expected platform audit sessions and sleep cycles.

3241Given the size of the AMC it is not anticipated that the AMC would roll over. If the AMC
3242were to roll over, and the storage of the AMC still allowed updates, the AMC could cycle and
3243start at 0 again.

3244**End of informative comment**

32451. The AMC is a TPM_COUNTER_VALUE.

32462. The AMC MUST last for 7 years or at least 1,000,000 audit sessions, whichever occurs
3247 first. After this amount of usage, there is no guarantee that the TPM will continue to
3248 properly increment the monotonic counter.

3249 **20. Design Section on Time Stamping**

3250 **Start of informative comment**

3251 The TPM provides a service to apply a time stamp to various blobs. The time stamp provided
3252 by the TPM is not an actual universal time clock (UTC) value but is the number of timer
3253 ticks the TPM has counted. It is the responsibility of the caller to associate the ticks to an
3254 actual UTC time.

3255 The TPM counts ticks from the start of a timing session. Timing sessions are platform
3256 dependent events that may or may not coincide with TPM_Init and TPM_Startup sessions.
3257 The reason for this difference is the availability of power to the TPM. In a PC desktop, for
3258 instance power could be continually available to the TPM by using power from the wall
3259 socket. For a PC mobile platform, power may not be available when only using the internal
3260 battery. It is a platform designer's decision as to when and how they supply power to the
3261 TPM to maintain the timing ticks.

3262 The TPM can provide a time stamping service. The TPM does not maintain an internal
3263 secure source of time rather the TPM maintains a count of the number of ticks that have
3264 occurred since the start of a timing session.

3265 On a PC, the TPM may use the timing source of the LPC bus or it may have a separate clock
3266 circuit. The anticipation is that availability of the TPM timing ticks and the tick resolution is
3267 an area of differentiation available to TPM manufactures and platform providers.

3268 **End of informative comment**

3269 1. This specification makes no requirement on the mechanism required to implement the
3270 tick counter in the TPM.

3271 2. This specification makes no requirement on the ability for the TPM to maintain the
3272 ability to increment the tick counter across power cycles or in different power modes on
3273 a platform.

3274 **20.1 Tick Components**

3275 **Start of informative comment**

3276 The TPM maintains for each tick session the following values:

3277 Tick Count Value (TCV) – The count of ticks for the session.

3278 Tick Increment Rate (TIR) – The rate at which the TCV is incremented. There is a set
3279 relationship between TIR and seconds, the relationship is set during manufacturing of the
3280 TPM and platform. This is the TPM_CURRENT_TICKS -> tickRate parameter.

3281 Tick Session Nonce (TSN) – The session nonce is set at the start of each tick session.

3282 **End of informative comment**

3283 1. The TCV MUST be set to 0 at the start of each tick session. The TPM MUST start a new
3284 tick session if the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR.

3285 2. The TSN MUST be set to the next value from the TPM RNG at the start of each new tick
3286 session. When the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR the
3287 TSN MUST be set to all zeros.

524
32883. If the TPM discovers tampering with the tick count (through timing changes etc) the TPM
3289 MUST treat this as an attack and shut down further TPM processing as if a self-test had
3290 failed.

3291**20.2 Basic Tick Stamp**

3292**Start of informative comment**

3293The TPM does not provide a secure time source, nor does it provide a signature over some
3294time value. The TPM does provide a signature over some current tick counter. The signature
3295covers a hash of the blob to stamp, the current counter value, the tick session nonce and
3296some fixed text.

3297The Tick Stamp Result (TSR) is the result of the tick stamp operation that associates the
3298TCV, TSN and the blob. There is no association with the TCV or TSR with any UTC value at
3299this point.

3300**End of informative comment**

3301**20.3 Associating a TCV with UTC**

3302**Start of informative comment**

3303An outside observer would like to associate a TCV with a relevant time value. The following
3304shows how to accomplish this task. This protocol is not required but shows how to
3305accomplish the job.

3306EntityA wants to have BlobA time stamped. EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on BlobA.
3307This creates TSRB (TickStampResult for Blob). TSRB records TSRBTCV, the current value of
3308the TCV, and associates TSRBTCV with the TSN.

3309Now EntityA needs to associate a TCV with a real time value. EntityA creates blob TS which
3310contains some known text like "Tick Stamp". EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on blob TS
3311creating TSR1. This records TSR1TCV, the current value of the TCV, and associates
3312TSR1TCV with the TSN.

3313EntityA sends TSR1 to a Time Authority (TA). TA creates TA1 which associates TSR1 with
3314UTC1.

3315EntityA now performs TPM_TickStamp on TA1. This creates TSR2. TSR2 records TSR2TCV,
3316the current values of the TCV, and associates TSR2TCV with the TSN.

3317**Analyzing the associations**

3318EntityA has three TSR's; TSRB the TSR of the blob that we wanted to time stamp, TSR1 the
3319TSR associated with the TS blob and TSR2 the TSR associated with the information from
3320the TA. EntityA wants to show an association between the various TSR such that there is a
3321connection between the UTC and BlobA.

3322From TSR1 EntityA knows that TSR1TCV is less than the UTC. This is true since the TA is
3323signing TSR1 and the creation of TSR1 has to occur before the signature of TSR1. Stated
3324mathematically:

3325
$$\text{TSR1TCV} < \text{UTC1}$$

3326From TSR2 EntityA knows that TSR2TCV is greater than the UTC. This is true since the
3327TPM is signing TA1 which must be created before it was signed. Stated mathematically:

3328 $TSR2TCV > UTC1$

3329 EntityA now knows $TSR1TCV$ and $TSR2TCV$ bound $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

3330 $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

3331 This association holds true if the TSN for $TSR1$ matches the TSN for $TSR2$. If some event
3332 occurs that causes the TPM to create a new TSN and restart the TCV then EntityA must
3333 start the process all over again.

3334 EntityA does not know when $UTC1$ occurred in the interval between $TSR1TCV$ and
3335 $TSR2TCV$. In fact, the value $TSR2TCV$ minus $TSR1TCV$ ($TSRDELTA$) is the amount of
3336 uncertainty to which a TCV value should be associated with $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

3337 $TSRDELTA = TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV$ iff $TSR1TSN = TSR2TSN$

3338 EntityA can obtain $k1$ the relationship between ticks and seconds using the
3339 `TPM_GetCapability` command. EntityA also obtains $k2$ the possible errors per tick. EntityA
3340 now calculate $DeltaTime$ which is the conversion of ticks to seconds and the $TSRDELTA$.
3341 State mathematically:

3342 $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDELTA) + (k2 * TSRDELTA)$

3343

3344 To make the association between $DeltaTime$, UTC and $TSRB$ note the following:

3345 $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDelta) + Drift = TimeChange + Drift$

3346 Where $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) < k2 * TSRDelta$

3347 (1) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

3348 True since you cannot sign something before it exists

3349 (2) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR1TCV + TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV \leq TSR1TCV + DeltaTime (=$
3350 $TSR1TCV + TimeChange + Drift)$

3351 True because $TSR1$ and $TSR2$ are in the same tick session proved by the same TSN. (Note
3352 $TimeChange$ is positive!)

3353 (3) $0 < UTC1 - TSR1TCV < DeltaTime$

3354 (Subtract $TSR1TCV$ from all sides)

3355 (4) $0 > TSR1TCV - UTC1 > -DeltaTime = -TimeChange - Drift$

3356 (Multiply through by -1)

3357 (5) $TimeChange/2 > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] > -TimeChange/2 - Drift$

3358 (add $TimeChange/2$ to all sides)

3359 (6) $TimeChange/2 + ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)]$

3360 $> -TimeChange/2 - ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

3361 Making the large side of an equality bigger, and potentially making the small side smaller.

3362 (7) $ABSOLUTEVALUE[TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] < TimeChange/2 +$

3363 $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

3364 (Definition of Absolute Value, and $TimeChange$ is positive)

533
3365
3366From which we see that $TSR1TCV$ is approximately $UTC1 - TimeChange/2$ with a symmetric
3367possible error of $TimeChange/2 + AbsoluteValue(Drift)$

3368We can calculate this error as being less than $k1 * TSRDelta/2 + k2 * TSRDelta$.

3369
3370EntityA now has the ability to associate $UTC1$ with $TSBTSV$ and by allow others to know
3371that $BlobA$ was signed at a certain time. First $TSBTSN$ must equal $TSR1TSN$. This
3372relationship allows EntityA to assert that $TSRB$ occurs during the same session as $TSR1$
3373and $TSR2$.

3374EntityA calculates $HashTimeDelta$ which is the difference between $TSR1TCV$ and $TSRBTCV$
3375and the conversion of ticks to seconds. $HashTimeDelta$ includes the same $k1$ and $k2$ as
3376calculated above. Stated mathematically:

3377
$$E = k2(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV)$$

3378
$$HashTimeDelta = k1(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV) + E$$

3379Now the following relationships hold:

3380(1) $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV - (TSRBTCV - TSR1TCV) < UTC1$

3381(2) $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV + HashTimeDelta + E < UTC1$

3382(3) $UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime - E < TSRBTCV < UTC1 - HashTimeDelta + E$

3383(4) $TSRBTCV = (UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime/2) + (E + DeltaTime/2)$

3384This has the correct properties

3385As $DeltaTime$ grows so does the error bar (or the uncertainty of the time association)

3386As the difference between the time of the measurement and the time of the time stamp
3387grows, so does the E as a function of E is $HashTimeDelta$

3388**End of informative comment**

3389**20.4 Additional Comments and Questions**

3390**Start of informative comment**

3391**Time Difference**

3392If two things are time stamped, say at $TCVs$ and $TCVe$ (for TCV at start, TCV at end) then
3393any entity can calculate the time difference between the two events and will get:

3394
$$TimeDiff = k1 * |TCVe - TCVs| + k2 * |TCVe - TCVs|$$

3395This $TimeDiff$ does not indicate what time the two events occurred at it merely gives the
3396time between the events. This time difference doesn't require a Time Authority.

3397**Why is TSN (tick session nonce) required?**

3398Without it, there is no way to associate a Time Authority stamp with any TSV , as the TSV
3399resets at the start of every tick session. The TSN proves that the concatenation of TSV and
3400 TSN is unique.

3401**How does the protocol prevent replay attacks?**

3402 The TPM signs the TSR sent to the TA. This TSR contains the unique combination of TSV
3403 and TSN. Since the TSN is unique to a tick session and the TSV continues to increment any
3404 attempt to recreate the same TSR will fail. If the TPM is reset such that the TSV is at the
3405 same value, the TSN will be a new value. If the TPM is not reset then the TSV continues to
3406 increment and will not repeat.

3407 **How does EntityA know that the TSR1 that the TA signs is recent?**

3408 It doesn't. EntityA checks however to ensure that the TSN is the same in all TSR. This
3409 ensures that the values are all related. If TSR1 is an old value then the HashTimeDelta will
3410 be a large value and the uncertainty of the relation of the signing to the UTC will be large.

3411 **Why does associating a UTC time with a TSV take two steps?**

3412 This is because it takes some time between when a request goes to a time authority and
3413 when the response comes. The protocol measures this time and uses it to create the time
3414 deltas. The relationship of TSV to UTC is somewhere between the request and response.

3415 **Affect of power on the tick counter**

3416 As the TPM is not required to maintain an internal clock and battery, how the platform
3417 provides power to the TPM affects the ability to maintain the tick counter. The original
3418 mechanism had the TPM maintaining an indication of how the platform provided the power.
3419 Previous performance does not predict what might occur in the future, as the platform may
3420 be unable to continue to provide the power (dead battery, pulled plug from wall etc). With
3421 the knowledge that the TPM cannot accurately report the future, the specification deleted
3422 tick type from the TPM.

3423 The information relative to what the platform is doing to provide power to the TPM is now a
3424 responsibility of the TSS. The TSS should first determine how the platform was built, using
3425 the platform credential. The TSS should also attempt to determine the actual performance
3426 of the TPM in regards to maintaining the tick count. The TSS can help in this determination
3427 by keeping track of the tick nonce. The tick nonce changes each time the tick count is lost.
3428 By comparing the tick nonce across system events the TSS can obtain a heuristic that
3429 represents how the platform provides power to the TPM.

3430 The TSS must define a standard set of values as to when the tick nonce continues to
3431 increment across system events.

3432 The following are some PC implementations that give the flavor of what is possible regarding
3433 the clock on a specific platform.

3434 TICK_INC - No TPM power battery. Clock comes from PCI clock, may stop from time to time
3435 due to clock stopping protocols such as CLKRUN.

3436 TICK_POWER - No TPM power battery. Clock source comes from PCI clock, always runs
3437 except in S3+.

3438 TICK_STSTATE - External power (might be battery) consumed by TPM during S3 only. Clock
3439 source comes either from a system clock that runs during S3 or from crystal/internal TPM
3440 source.

3441 TICK_STCLEAR - Standby power used to drive counter. In desktop, may be related to when
3442 system is plugged into wall. Clock source comes either from a system clock that runs when
3443 standby power is available or from crystal/internal TPM source.

3444TICK_ALWAYS - TPM power battery. Clock source comes either from a battery powered
3445system clock that crystal/internal TPM source.

3446**End of informative comment**

3447 **21. Context Management**

3448 **Start of informative comment**

3449 The TPM is a device that contains limited resources. Caching of the resources may occur
3450 without knowledge or assistance from the application that loaded the resource. In version
3451 1.1 there were two types of resources that had need of this support keys and authorization
3452 sessions. Each type had a separate load and restore operation. In version 1.2 there is the
3453 addition of transport sessions. To handle these situations generically 1.2 is defining a single
3454 context manager that all types of resources may use.

3455 The concept is simple, a resource manager requests that wrapping of a resource in a
3456 manner that securely protects the resource and only allows the restoring of the resource on
3457 the same TPM and during the same operational cycle.

3458 Consider a key successfully loaded on the TPM. The parent keys that loaded the key may
3459 have required a different set of PCR registers than are currently set on the TPM. For
3460 example, the end result is to have key5 loaded. Key3 is protected by key2, which is
3461 protected by key1, which is protected by the SRK. Key1 requires PCR1 to be in a certain
3462 state, key2 requires PCR2 to load and key3 requires PCR3. Now at some point in time after
3463 key1 loaded key2, PCR1 was extended with additional information. If key3 is evicted then
3464 there is no way to reload key3 until the platform is rebooted. To avoid this type of problem
3465 the TPM can execute context management routines. The context management routines save
3466 key3 in its current state and allow the TPM to restore the state without having to use the
3467 parent keys (key1 and key2).

3468 There are numerous issues with performing context management on sessions. These issues
3469 revolve around the use of the nonces in the session. If an attacker can successfully store,
3470 attack, fail and then reload the session the attacker can repeat the attack many times.

3471 The key that the TPM uses to encrypt blobs may be a volatile or non-volatile key. One
3472 mechanism would be for the TPM to generate a new key on each TPM_Startup command.
3473 Another would be for the TPM to generate the key and store it persistently in the
3474 TPM_PERMANENT_DATA area.

3475 The symmetric key should be relatively the same strength as a 2048-bit RSA key. 128-bit
3476 AES would be appropriate.

3477 **End of informative comment**

3478 1. Context management is a required function.

3479 2. Execution of the context commands MUST NOT cause the exposure of any TPM shielded
3480 location.

3481 3. The TPM MUST NOT allow the context saving of the EK or the SRK.

3482 4. The TPM MAY use either symmetric or asymmetric encryption. For asymmetric
3483 encryption the TPM MUST use a 2048 RSA key.

3484 5. A wrapped session blob MUST only be loadable once. A wrapped key blob MAY be
3485 reloadable.

3486 6. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent saved contexts other than keys.
3487 There is no minimum or maximum number of concurrent saved key contexts.

551

34887. All external session blobs (of type TPM_RT_TRANS or TPM_RT_AUTH) can be invalidated
3489 upon specific request (via TPM_FlushXXX using TPM_RT_CONTEXT as resource type).
3490 This does not include saved context blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY.

34918. External session blobs are invalidated on TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) or on
3492 TPM_Startup(any) based on the startup effects settings

3493 a. Saved context blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY with the attributes of parentPCRStatus =
3494 FALSE and isVolatile = FALSE SHOULD not be invalidated on TPM_Startup(any)

34959. All external sessions invalidate automatically upon installation of a new owner due to the
3496 setting of a new tpmProof.

349710. If the TPM enters failure mode ALL session blobs (including keys) MUST be invalidated

3498 a. Invalidation includes ensuring that contextNonceKey and contextNonceSession will
3499 change when the TPM recovers from the failure.

350011. Attempts to restore a wrapped blob after the successful completion of
3501 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) MUST fail. The exception is a wrapped key blob which may be
3502 long-term and which MAY restore after a TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).

350312. The save and load context commands are the generic equivalent to the context
3504 commands in 1.1. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:

3505 a. TPM_AuthSaveContext

3506 b. TPM_AuthLoadContext

3507 c. TPM_KeySaveContext

3508 d. TPM_KeyLoadContext

3509 **22. Eviction**

3510 **Start of informative comment**

3511 The TPM has numerous resources held inside of the TPM that may need eviction. The need
3512 for eviction occurs when the number or resources in use by the TPM exceed the available
3513 space. For resources that are hard to reload (i.e. keys tied to PCR values) the outside entity
3514 should first perform a context save before evicting items.

3515 In version 1.1 there were separate commands to evict separate resource types. This new
3516 command set uses the resource types defined for context saving and creates a generic
3517 command that will evict all resource types.

3518 **End of informative comment**

3519 1. The TPM MUST NOT flush the EK or SRK using this command.

3520 2. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:

- 3521 a. TPM_Terminate_Handle
- 3522 b. TPM_EvictKey
- 3523 c. TPM_Reset

3524**23. Session pool**

3525**Start of informative comment**

3526The TPM supports two types of sessions that use the rolling nonce protocol, authorization
3527and transport. These sessions require much of the same handling and internal storage by
3528the TPM. To allow more flexibility the internal storage for these sessions will be defined as
3529coming from the same pool (or area).

3530The pool requires that three (3) sessions be available. The entities using the TPM can
3531determine the usage models of what sessions are active. This allows a TPM to have 3
3532authorization sessions or 3 transport sessions at one time.

3533Using all available pool resources for transport sessions is not a very usable model. If all
3534resources are in use by transport, there are no resources available for authorization
3535sessions and hence no ability to execute any commands requiring authorization. A more
3536realistic model would be to have two transport sessions and one authorization session.
3537While this is an unrealistic model for actual execution there will be no requirement that the
3538TPM prevent this from happening. A model of how it could occur would be when there are
3539two applications running, both using 2 transport sessions and one authorization session.
3540When switching between the applications, if the requirement was that only 2 transport
3541sessions could be active the TSS that would provide the context switch would have to
3542ensure that the transport sessions were context saved first.

3543Sessions can be virtualized, so while the TPM may only have 3 loaded sessions, there may
3544be an unlimited number of context saved sessions stored outside the TPM.

3545**End of informative comment**

35461. The TPM MUST support a minimum of three (3) concurrent sessions. The sessions MAY
3547 be any mix of authentication and transport sessions.

3548 **24. Initialization Operations**

3549 **Start of informative comment**

3550 Initialization is the process where the TPM establishes an operating environment from a no
3551 power state. Initialization occurs in many different flavors with PCR, keys, handles, sessions
3552 and context blobs all initialized, reloaded or unloaded according to the rules and platform
3553 environment.

3554 Initialization does not affect the operational characteristics of the TPM (like TPM
3555 Ownership).

3556 Clear is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. The clear commands need
3557 protection from unauthorized use and must allow for the possibility of changing Owners.
3558 The clear process requires authorization to execute and locks to prevent unauthorized
3559 operation.

3560 The clear functionality performs the following tasks:

3561 Invalidate SRK. Invalidating the SRK invalidates all protected storage areas below the SRK
3562 in the hierarchy. The areas below are not destroyed they just have no mechanism to be
3563 loaded anymore.

3564 All TPM volatile and non-volatile data is set to default value except the endorsement key
3565 pair. The clear includes the Owner-AuthData, so after performing the clear, the TPM has no
3566 Owner. The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation.

3567 The TPM shall return TPM_NOSRK until an Owner is set. After the execution of the clear
3568 command, the TPM must go through a power cycle to properly set the PCR values.

3569 The Owner has ultimate control of when a clear occurs.

3570 The Owner can perform the TPM_OwnerClear command using the TPM Owner
3571 authorization. If the Owner wishes to disable this clear command and require physical
3572 access to perform the clear, the Owner can issue the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command.

3573 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue
3574 the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear. The
3575 TPM_DisableForceClear disables the TPM_ForceClear command for the duration of the
3576 power cycle. TSS startup code that does not issue the TPM_DisableForceClear leaves the
3577 TPM vulnerable to a denial of service attack. The assumption is that the TSS startup code
3578 will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power cycle after the TSS determines that it
3579 will not be necessary to issue the TPM_ForceClear command. The purpose of the
3580 TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or
3581 forgotten the TPM Ownership token.

3582 The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the
3583 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

3584 **End of informative comment**

3585 1. The TPM MUST support proper initialization. Initialization MUST properly configure the
3586 TPM to execute in the platform environment.

3587 2. Initialization MUST ensure that handles, keys, sessions, context blobs and PCR are
3588 properly initialized, reloaded or invalidated according to the platform environment.

569

35893. The description of the platform environment arrives at the TPM in a combination of
3590 TPM_Init and TPM_Startup.

3591 **25. HMAC digest rules**

3592 **Start of informative comment**

3593 The order of calculation of the HMAC is critical to being able to validate the authorization
3594 and parameters of a command. All commands use the same order and format for the
3595 calculation.

3596 A more exact representation of a command would be the following

```
3597 *****  
3598 * TAG | LEN | ORD | HANDLES | DATA | AUTH1 (o) | AUTH2 (o) *  
3599 *****
```

3600 The text area for the HMAC calculation would be the concatenation of the following:

3601 ORD || DATA

3602 **End of informative comment**

3603 The HMAC digest of parameters uses the following order

- 3604 1. Skip tag and length
- 3605 2. Include ordinal. This is the 1S parameter in the HMAC column for each command
- 3606 3. Skip handle(s). This includes key and other session handles
- 3607 4. Include data and other parameters for the command. This starts with the 2S parameter
3608 in the HMAC column for each command.
- 3609 5. Skip all AuthData values.

3610 **26. Generic authorization session termination rules**

3611 **Start of informative comment**

3612 These rules are the generic rules that govern all authorization sessions, a specific session
3613 type may have additional rules or modifications of the generic rules

3614 **End of informative comment**

3615 1. A TPM SHALL unilaterally perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon
3616 any of the following events

- 3617 a. “continueUse” flag in the authorization session is FALSE
- 3618 b. Shared secret of the session in use to create the exclusive-or for confidentiality of
3619 data. Example is TPM_ChangeAuth terminates the authorization session.
3620 TPM_ExecuteTransport does not terminate the session due to protections inherent in
3621 transport sessions.
- 3622 c. When the associated entity is invalidated
- 3623 d. When the command returns a fatal error. This is due to error returns not setting a
3624 nonceEven. Without a new nonceEven the rolling nonces sequence is broken hence
3625 the TPM MUST terminate the session.
- 3626 e. Failure of an authorization check at the start of the command
- 3627 f. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

3628 2. The TPM MAY perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon the following
3629 events

- 3630 a. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_STATE)

3631 **27. PCR Grand Unification Theory**

3632 **Start of informative comment**

3633 This section discusses the unification of PCR definition and use with locality.

3634 The PCR allow the definition of a platform configuration. With the addition of locality, the
3635 meaning of a configuration is somewhat larger. This section defines how the two combine to
3636 provide the TPM user information relative to the platform configuration.

3637 These are the issues regarding PCR and locality at this time

3638 **Definition of configuration**

3639 A configuration is the combination of PCR, PCR attributes and the locality.

3640 **Passing the creators configuration to the user of data**

3641 For many reasons, from the creator's viewpoint and the user's viewpoint, the configuration
3642 in use by the creator is important information. This information needs transmitting to the
3643 user with the data and with integrity.

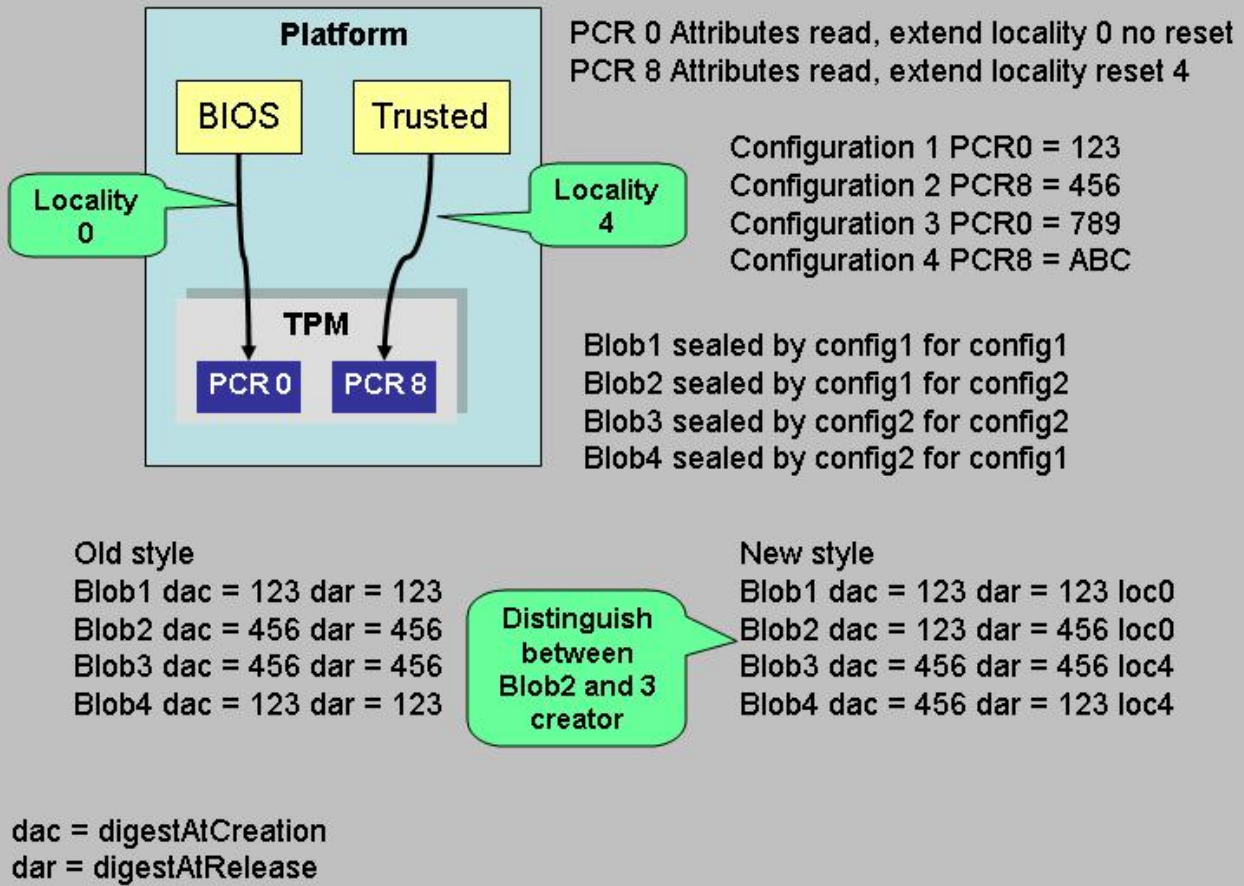
3644 The configuration must include the locality and may not be the same configuration that will
3645 use the data. This allows one configuration to seal a value for future use and the end user
3646 to know the genealogy of where the data comes from.

3647 **Definition of "Use"**

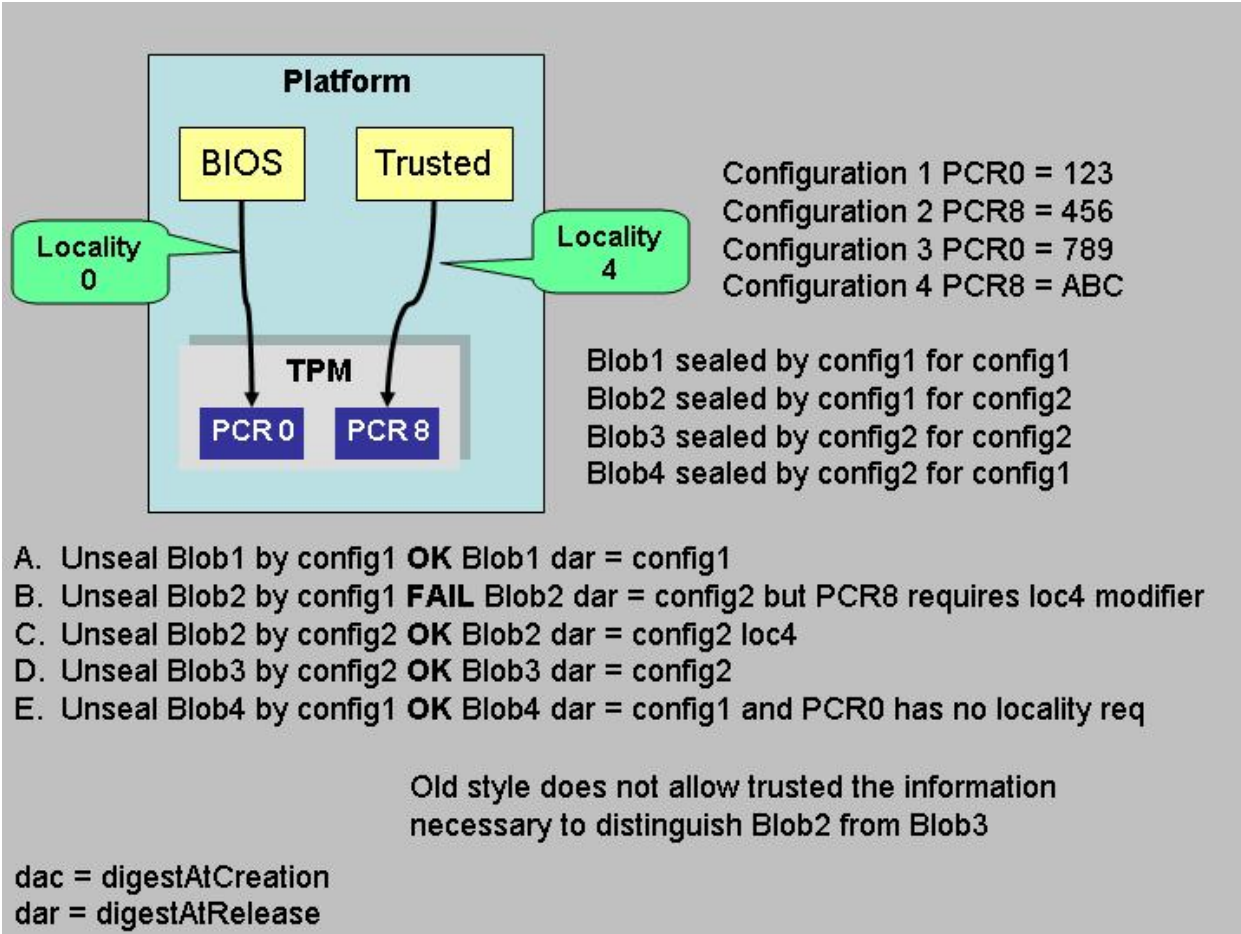
3648 See the definition of TPM_PCR_ATTRIBUTES for the attributes and the normative
3649 statements regarding the use of the attributes. The use of a configuration is when the TPM
3650 needs to ensure that the proper platform configuration is present. The first example is for
3651 Unseal, the TPM must only release the information sealed if the platform configuration
3652 matches the configuration specified by the seal creator. Here the use of locality is implicit in
3653 the PCR attributes, if PCR8 requires locality 2 to be present then the seal creator ensures
3654 that locality 2 is asserted by defining a configuration that uses PCR8.

3655 The creation of a blob that specifies a configuration for use is not a "use" itself. So the SEAL
3656 command does is not a use for specifying the use of a PCR configuration.

3657



3658
 3659 By using the “new style” or TPM_PCR_INFO_LONG structure the user can determine that
 3660 Blob2 is different that Blob3.



3661
3662 Case B is the only failure and this shows the use of the locality modifier and PCR locality
3663 attribute.

3664 Additional attempts are obvious failures, config3 and config4 are unable to unseal any of
3665 the 4 blobs.

3666 One example is illustrative of the problems of just specifying locality without an
3667 accompanying PCR. Assume Blob5 which specifies a dar of config1 and a locality 4 modifier.
3668 Now either config2 or config4 can unseal Blob5. In fact there is no way to restrict ANY
3669 process that gains access to locality 4 from performing the unseal. As many platforms will
3670 have no restrictions as to which process can load in locality 4 there is no additional benefit
3671 of specifying a locality modifier. If the sealer wants protections, they need to specify a PCR
3672 that requires a locality modifier.

3673 Defining locality modifiers dynamically

3674 This feature would enable the platform to specify how and when a locality modifier applies
3675 to a PCR. The current definition of PCR attributes has the values set in TPM manufacturing
3676 and static for all TPM in a specific platform type (like a PC).

3677 Defining dynamic attributes would make the use of a PCR very difficult. The sealer would
3678 have to have some way of ensuring that their wishes were enforced and challengers would
3679 have to pay close attention to the current PCR attributes. For these reasons the setting of
3680 the PCR attributes is defined as a static operation made during the platform specific
3681 specification.

3682End of informative comment**368327.1 Validate Key for use****3684Start of informative comment**

3685The following shows the order and checks done before the use of a key that has PCR or
3686locality restrictions.

3687Note that there is no check for the PCR registers on the DSAP session. This is due to the
3688fact that DSAP checks for the continued validity of the PCR that are attached to the DSAP
3689and any change causes the invalidation of the DSAP session.

3690The checks must validate the locality of the DSAP session as the PCR registers in use could
3691have locality restrictions.

3692End of informative comment

36931. If the authorization session is DSAP

3694 a. If the DSAP -> localityAtRelease is not 0x1F (or in other words some localities are not
3695 allowed)

3696 i. Validate that TPM_STANY_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by DSAP ->
3697 pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease, on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY

3698 b. If DSAP -> digestAtRelease is not 0

3699 i. Calculate the current digest and compare to digestAtRelease, return
3700 TPM_BAD_PCR on mismatch

3701 c. If the DSAP points to an ordinal delegation

3702 i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the intended ordinal

3703 d. If the DSAP points to a key delegation

3704 i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the key

3705 e. If the key delegated is a CMK key

3706 i. The TPM MUST check the CMK_DELEGATE restrictions

37072. Set LK to the loaded key that is being used

37083. If LK -> pcrInfoSize is not 0

3709 a. If LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection identifies the use of one or more PCR

3710 i. Calculate H1 a TPM_COMPOSITE_HASH of the PCR selected by LK -> pcrInfo ->
3711 releasePCRSelection

3712 ii. Compare H1 to LK -> pcrInfo -> digestAtRelease on mismatch return
3713 TPM_WRONGPCRVAL

3714 b. If localityAtRelease is NOT 0x1F

3715 i. Validate that TPM_STANY_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by LK -> pcrInfo
3716 -> localityAtRelease on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY

37174. Allow use of the key

3718**28. Non Volatile Storage**

3719**Start of informative comment**

3720The TPM contains protected non-volatile storage. There are many uses of this type of area;
3721however, a TPM needs to have a defined set of operations that touch any protected area.
3722The idea behind these instructions is to provide an area that the manufacturers and owner
3723can use for storing information in the TPM.

3724The TCG will define a limited set of information that it sees a need of storing in the TPM.
3725The TPM and platform manufacturer may add additional areas.

3726The NV storage area has a limited use before it will no longer operate Hence the NV
3727commands are under TPM Owner control.

3728Controls exist to allow a manufacturer to define and write NV indexes during
3729manufacturing before an owner exists. This is strictly a manufacturing mode, as it allows a
3730manufacturer to bypass security.

3731To locate if an index is available, use TPM_GetCapability to return the index and the size of
3732the area in use by the index.

3733The area may not be larger than the TPM input buffer. The TPM will report the maximum
3734size available to allocate.

3735The storage area is an opaque area to the TPM. The TPM, other than providing the storage,
3736does not review the internals of the area.

3737To SEAL a blob, the creator of the area specifies the use of PCR registers to read the value.
3738This is the exact property of SEAL.

3739To obtain a signed indication of what is in a NV store area the caller would setup a
3740transport session with logging on and then get the signed log. The log shows the parameters
3741so the caller can validate that the TPM holds the value.

3742There is an attribute, for each index, that defines the expected write scheme for the index.
3743The TPM may handle data storage differently based on the write scheme attribute that
3744defines the expected for the index. Whenever possible the NV memory should be allocated
3745with the write scheme attribute set to update as one block and not as individual bytes.

3746The non-volatile storage described here is defined by TPM_NV_DefineSpace. Other
3747structures that a manufacturer might decide to store in non-volatile memory (e.g., PCRs,
3748keys, the audit digest) are logically separate and do not affect the space available for the NV
3749indexed storage described here. An exception is a key that is moved from volatile to NV
3750memory when set as "owner evict". This NV memory may come from a pool shared with NV
3751define space.

3752**End of informative comment**

37531. The TPM MUST support the NV commands. The TPM MUST support the NV area as
3754 defined by the TPM_NV_INDEX values.

37552. The TPM MAY manage the storage area using any allocation and garbage collection
3756 scheme.

605

37573. To remove an area from the NV store the TPM owner would use the
3758 TPM_NV_DefineSpace command with a size of 0. Any authorized user can change the
3759 value written in the NV store.

37604. The TPM MUST treat the NV area as a shielded location.

3761 a. The TPM does not provide any additional protections (like additional encryption) to
3762 the NV area.

37635. If a write operation is interrupted, then the TPM makes no guarantees about the data
3764 stored at the specified index. It MAY be the previous value, MAY be the new value or
3765 MAY be undefined or unpredictable. After the interruption the TPM MAY indicate that
3766 the index contains unpredictable information.

3767 a. The TPM MUST ensure that in case of interruption of a write to an index that all
3768 other indexes are not affected

37696. Minimum size of NV area is platform specific. The maximum area is TPM vendor specific.

37707. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures
3771 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage structures implied
3772 by required index values or reserved index values.

3773**28.1 NV storage design principles**

3774**Start of informative comment**

3775This section lists the design principles that motivate the NV area in the TPM. There was the
3776realization that the current design made use of NV storage but not necessarily efficiently.
3777The DIR, BIT and other commands placed demands on the TPM designer and required
3778areas that while allowing for flexible use reserved space most likely never used (like DIR for
3779locality 1).

3780The following are the design principles that drive the function definitions.

37811. Provide efficient use of NV area on the TPM. NV storage is a very limited resource and
3782data stored in the NV area should be as small as possible.

37832. The TPM does not control, edit, validate or manipulate in any manner the information in
3784the NV store. The TPM is merely a storage device. The TPM does enforce the access rules as
3785set by the TPM Owner.

37863. Allocation of the NV area for a specific use must be under control of the TPM Owner.

37874. The TPM Owner, when defining the area to use, will set the access and use policy for the
3788area. The TPM Owner can set AuthData values, delegations, PCR values and other controls
3789on the access allowed to the area.

37905. There must be a capability to allow TPM and platform manufacturers to use this area
3791without a TPM Owner being present. This allows the manufacturer to place information into
3792the TPM without an onerous manufacturing flow. Information in this category would
3793include EK credential and platform credential.

37946. The management and use of the NV area should not require a large number of ordinals.

37957. The management and use of the NV area should not introduce new operating strategies
3796into the TPM and should be easy to implement.

3797 **End of informative comment**

3798 **28.1.1 NV Storage use models**

3799 **Start of informative comment**

3800 This informative section describes some of the anticipated use models and the attributes a
3801 user of the storage area would need to set.

3802

3803 **Owner authorized for all access**

3804 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_OWERREAD || PER_OWNERWRITE

3805 WriteValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

3806 ReadValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

3807

3808 **Set AuthData value**

3809 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_AUTHREAD || PER_AUTHWRITE, auth =
3810 authValue

3811 WriteValue(authValue, data)

3812 ReadValue(authValue, data)

3813

3814 **Write once, only way to change is to delete and redefine**

3815 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_WRITEDEFINE

3816 WriteValue(size = x, data) // successful

3817 WriteValue(size = 0) // locks

3818 WriteValue(size = x) // fails

3819...

3820 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // Does not affect lock

3821 WriteValue(size = x, data) // fails

3822

3823 **Write until specific index is locked, lock reset on Startup(ST_Clear)**

3824 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 3, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

3825 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 5, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

3826 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

3827 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

3828 WriteValue(index = 3, size = 0) // locks

3829 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // fails

3830 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

614
3831...
3832TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock
3833WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
3834WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
3835
3836**Write until index 0 is locked, lock reset by Startup(ST_Clear)**
3837TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 5
3838TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 3
3839WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
3840WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
3841
3842WriteValue(index = 0) // sets SV -> bGlobalLock to TRUE
3843WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // fails
3844WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // fails
3845...
3846TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock
3847WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
3848WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
3849**End of informative comment**

3850**28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing**

3851**Start of informative comment**

3852The TPM needs the ability to write values to the NV store during manufacturing. It is
3853possible that the values written at this time would require authorization during normal TPM
3854use. The actual enforcement of these authorizations during manufacturing would cause
3855numerous problems for the manufacturer.

3856The TPM will not enforce the NV authorization restrictions until the execution of a
3857TPM_NV_DefineSpace with the handle of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK.

3858The 'D' bit indicates an NV index defined (typically) during manufacturing and then locked.
3859While nvLocked is FALSE, indices with the 'D' set can be defined, deleted, or redefined as
3860desired. Once nvLocked is set TRUE, the 'D' bit indices are locked. They cannot be defined,
3861deleted or redefined.

3862nvLocked has the lifetime of the endorsement key.

3863**End of informative comment**

38641. The TPM MUST NOT enforce the NV authorizations (auth values, PCR etc.) prior to the
3865 execution of TPM_NV_DefineSpace with an index of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK

- 3866 a. While the TPM is not enforcing NV authorizations, the TPM SHALL allow the use of
3867 TPM_NV_DefineSpace in any operational state (disabled, deactivated)

3868**29. Delegation Model**

3869**Start of informative comment**

3870The TPM Owner is an entity with a single “super user” privilege to control TPM operation.
3871Thus if any aspect of a TPM requires management, the TPM Owner must perform that task
3872himself or reveal his privilege information to another entity. This other entity thereby
3873obtains the privilege to operate all TPM controls, not just those intended by the Owner.
3874Therefore the Owner often must have greater trust in the other entity than is strictly
3875necessary to perform an arbitrary task.

3876This delegation model addresses this issue by allowing delegation of individual TPM Owner
3877privileges (the right to use individual Owner authorized TPM commands) to individual
3878entities, which may be trusted processes.

3879Basic requirements:

3880**Consumer user does not need to enter or remember a TPM Owner password.** This is an
3881ease of use and security issue. Not remembering the password may lead to bad security
3882practices, increased tech support calls and lost data.

3883**Role based administration and separation of duty.** It should be possible to delegate just
3884enough Owner privileges to perform some administration task or carry out some duty,
3885without delegating all Owner privileges.

3886**TPM should support multiple trusted processes.** When a platform has the ability to load
3887and execute multiple trusted processes then the TPM should be able to participate in the
3888protection of secrets and proper management of the processes and their secrets. In fact, the
3889TPM most likely is the root of storage for these values. The TPM should enable the proper
3890management, protection and distribution of values held for the various trusted processes
3891that reside on the same platform.

3892**Trusted processes may require restrictions.** A fundamental security tenet is the principle
3893of least privilege, that is, to limit process functionality to only the functions necessary to
3894accomplish the task. This delegation model provides a building block that allows a system
3895designer to create single purpose processes and then ensure that the process only has
3896access to the functions that it requires to complete the task.

3897**Maintain the current authorization structure and protocols.** There is no desire to
3898remove the current TPM Owner and the protocols that authorize and manage the TPM
3899Owner. The capabilities are a delegation of TPM Owner responsibilities. The delegation
3900allows the TPM Owner to delegate some or all of the actions that a TPM Owner can perform.
3901The TPM Owner has complete control as to when and if the capability delegation is in use.

3902**End of informative comment**

3903**29.1 Table Requirements**

3904**Start of informative comment**

3905**No ocean front property in table** – We want the table to be virtually unlimited in size.
3906While we need some storage, we do not want to pick just one number and have that be the
3907min and max. This drives the need for the ability to save, off the TPM, delegation elements.

3908 **Revoking a delegation, does not affect other** delegations – The TPM Owner may, at any
3909 time, determine that a delegation is no longer appropriate. The TPM Owner needs to be able
3910 to ensure the revocation of all delegations in the same family. The TPM Owner also wants to
3911 ensure that revocation done in one family does not affect any other family of delegations.

3912 **Table seeded by OEM** – The OEM should do the seeding of the table during manufacturing.
3913 This allows the OEM to ship the platform and make it easy for the platform owner to
3914 startup the first time. The definition of manufacturing in this context includes any time
3915 prior to or including the time the user first turns on the platform.

3916 **Table not tied to a TPM owner** – The table is not tied to the existence of a TPM owner. This
3917 facilitates the seeding of the table by the OEM.

3918 **External delegations need authorization and assurance of** revocation – When a
3919 delegation is held external to the TPM, the TPM must ensure authorization of the delegation
3920 when loading the delegation. Upon revocation of a family or other family changes the TPM
3921 must ensure that prior valid delegations are not successfully loaded.

3922 **90% case, no need for external store** – The normal case should be that the platform does
3923 not need to worry about having external delegations. This drives the need for some NV
3924 storage to hold a minimum number of table rows.

3925 **End of informative comment**

3926 **29.2 How this works**

3927 **Start of informative comment**

3928 The existing TPM owner authorization model is that certain TPM commands require the
3929 authorization of the TPM Owner to operate. The authorization value is the TPM Owners
3930 token. Using the token to authorize the command is proof of TPM Ownership. There is only
3931 one token and knowledge of this token allows all operations that require proof of TPM
3932 Ownership.

3933 This extension allows the TPM Owner to create a new AuthData value and to delegate some
3934 of the TPM Ownership rights to the new AuthData value.

3935 The use model of the delegation is to create an authorization session (DSAP) using the
3936 delegated AuthData value instead of the TPM Owner token. This allows delegation to work
3937 without change to any current command.

3938 The intent is to permit delegation of selected Owner privileges to selected entities, be they
3939 local or remote, separate from the current software environment or integrated into the
3940 current software environment. Thus Owner privileges may be delegated to entities on other
3941 platforms, to entities (trusted processes) that are part of the normal software environment
3942 on the Owner's platform, or to a minimalist software environment on the Owner's platform
3943 (created by booting from a CDROM, or special disk partition), for example.

3944 Privileges may be delegated to a particular entity via definition of a particular process on the
3945 Owner's platform (by dictating PCR values), and/or by stipulating a particular AuthData
3946 value. The resultant TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and any AuthData value must be
3947 passed by the Owner to the chosen entity.

3948 Delegation to an external entity (not on the Owner's platform) probably requires an
3949 AuthData value and a NULL PCR selection. (But the AuthData value might be sealed to a
3950 desired set of PCRs in that remote platform.)

3951 Delegation to a trusted process provided by the local OS requires a PCR that indicates the
3952 trusted process. The authorization token should be a fixed value (any well known value),
3953 since the OS has no means to safely store the authorization token without sealing that
3954 token to the PCR that indicates the trusted process. It is suggested that the value 0x111...
3955 111 be used.

3956 Delegation to a specially booted entity requires either a PCR or an authorization token, and
3957 preferably both, to recognize both the process and the fact that the Owner wishes that
3958 process to execute.

3959 The central delegation data structure is a set of tables. These tables indicate the command
3960 ordinals delegated by the TPM Owner to a particular defined environment. The tables allow
3961 the distinction of delegations belonging to different environments.

3962 The TPM is capable of storing internally a few table elements to enable the passing of the
3963 delegation information from an entity that has no access to memory or storage of the
3964 defined environment.

3965 The number of delegations that the tables can hold is a dynamic number with the
3966 possibility of adding or deleting entries at any time. As the total number is dynamic, and
3967 possibly large, the TPM provides a mechanism to cache the delegations. The cache of a
3968 delegation must include integrity and confidentiality. The term for the encrypted cached
3969 entity is blob. The blob contains a counter (verificationCount) validated when the TPM loads
3970 the blob.

3971 An Owner uses the counter mechanism to prevent the use of undesirable blobs; they
3972 increment verificationCount inside the TPM and insert the current value of
3973 verificationCount into selected table elements, including temporarily loaded blobs. (This is
3974 the reason why a TPM must still load a blob that has an incorrect verificationCount.) An
3975 Owner can verify the delegation state of his platform (immediately after updating
3976 verificationCount) by keeping copies of the elements that have just been given the current
3977 value of verificationCount, signing those copies, and sending them to a third party.

3978 Verification probably requires interaction with a third party because acceptable table
3979 profiles will change with time and the most important reason for verification is suspicion of
3980 the state of a TOS in a platform. Such suspicion implies that the verification check must be
3981 done by a trusted security monitor (perhaps separate trusted software on another platform
3982 or separate trusted software on CDROM, for example). The signature sent to the third party
3983 must include a freshness value, to prevent replay attacks, and the security monitor must
3984 verify that a response from the third party includes that freshness value. In situations
3985 where the highest confidence is required, the third party could provide the response by an
3986 out-of-band mechanism, such as an automated telephone service with spoken confirmation
3987 of acceptability of platform state and freshness value.

3988 A challenger can verify an entire family using a single transport session with logging, that
3989 increments the verification count, updates the verification count in selected blobs, reads the
3990 tables and obtains a single transport session signature over all of the blobs in a family.

3991 If no Owner is installed, the delegation mechanisms are inoperative and third party
3992 verification of the tables is impossible, but tables can still be administered and corrected.
3993 (See later for more details.)

3994 To perform an operation using the delegation the entity establishes an authorization session
3995 and uses the delegated AuthData value for all HMAC calculations. The TPM validates the

3996 AuthData value, and in the case of defined environments checks the PCR values. If the
3997 validation is successful, the TPM then validates that the delegation allows the intended
3998 operation.

3999 There can be at least two delegation rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM, and
4000 these may be changed using Owner privilege or delegated Owner privilege. Each delegation
4001 table row is a member of a family, and there can be at least eight family rows stored in non-
4002 volatile storage inside a TPM. An entity belonging to one family can be delegated the
4003 privilege to create a new family and edit the rows in its own family, but no other family.

4004 In addition to tying together delegations, the family concept and the family table also
4005 provides the mechanism for validation and revocation of exported delegate table rows, as
4006 well as the mechanism for the platform user to perform validation of all delegations in a
4007 family.

4008 **End of informative comment**

4009 **29.3 Family Table**

4010 **Start of informative comment**

4011 The family table has three main purposes.

4012 - To provide for the grouping of rows in the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE; entities identified in
4013 delegate table rows as belonging to the same family can edit information in the other
4014 delegate table rows with the same family ID. This allows a family to manage itself and
4015 provides an easier mechanism during upgrades.

4016 - To provide the validation and revocation mechanism for exported
4017 TPM_DELEGATE_ROWS and those stored on the TPM in the delegation table

4018 - To provide the ability to perform validation of all delegations in a family

4019 The family table must have eight rows, and may have more. The maximum number of rows
4020 is TPM vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command.

4021 As the family table has a limited number of rows, there is the possibility that this number
4022 could be insufficient. However, the ability to create a virtual amount of rows, like done for
4023 the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE would create the need to have all of the validation and
4024 revocation mechanisms that the family table provides for the delegate table. This could
4025 become a recursive process, so for this version of the specification, the recursion stops at
4026 the family table.

4027 The family table contains four pieces of information: the family ID, the family label, the
4028 family verification count, and the family flags.

4029 The family ID is a 32-bit value that provides a sequence number of the families in use.

4030 The family label is a one-byte field that family table manager software would use to help
4031 identify the information associated with the family. Software must be able to map the
4032 numeric value associated with each family to the ASCII-string family name displayable in
4033 the user interface.

4034 The family verification count is a 32-bit sequence number that identifies the last outside
4035 verification and attestation of the family information.

4036Initialization of the family table occurs by using the TPM_Delegate_Manage command with
4037the TPM_FAMILY_CREATE option.

4038The verificationCount parameter enables a TPM to check that all rows of a family in the
4039delegate table are approved (by an external verification process), even if rows have been
4040stored off-TPM.

4041The family flags allow the use and administration of the family table row, and its associated
4042delegate table rows.

4043**Row contents**

4044Family ID – 32-bits

4045Row label – One byte

4046Family verification count – 32-bits

4047Family enable/disable use/admin flags – 32-bits

4048**End of informative comment**

4049**29.4 Delegate Table**

4050**Start of informative comment**

4051The delegate table has three main purposes, from the point of view of the TPM. This table
4052holds:

4053The list of ordinals allowable for use by the delegate

4054The identity of a process that can use the ordinal list

4055The AuthData value to use the ordinal list

4056The delegate table has a minimum of two (2) rows; the maximum number of rows is TPM
4057vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command. Each row
4058represents a delegation and, optionally, an assignment of that delegation to an identified
4059trusted process.

4060The non-volatile delegate rows permit an entity to pass delegation rows to a software
4061environment without regard to shared memory between the entity and the software
4062environment. The size of the delegate table does not restrict the number of delegations
4063because TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation can create blobs for use in a DSAP session,
4064bypassing the delegate table.

4065The TPM Owner controls the tables that control the delegations, but (recursively) the TPM
4066Owner can delegate the management of the tables to delegated entities. Entities belonging
4067to a particular group (family) of delegation processes may edit delegate table entries that
4068belong to that family.

4069After creation of a delegation entry there is no restriction on the use of the delegation in a
4070properly authorized session. The TPM Owner has properly authorized the creation of the
4071delegation so the use of the delegation occurs whenever the delegate wishes to use it.

4072The rows of the delegate table held in non-volatile storage are only changeable under TPM
4073Owner authorization.

4074The delegate table contains six pieces of information: PCR information, the AuthData value
4075for the delegated capabilities, the delegation label, the family ID, the verification count, and

4076 a profile of the capabilities that are delegated to the trusted process identified by the PCR
4077 information.

4078 **Row Elements**

4079 ASCII label – Label that provides information regarding the row. This is not a sensitive item.

4080 Family ID – The family that the delegation belongs to; this is not a sensitive item.

4081 Verification count – Specifies the version, or generation, of this row; version validity
4082 information is in the family table. This is not a sensitive value.

4083 Delegated capabilities – The capabilities granted, by the TPM Owner, to the identified
4084 process. This is not a sensitive item.

4085 **Authorization and Identity**

4086 The creator of the delegation sets the AuthData value and the PCR selection. The creator is
4087 responsible for the protection and dissemination of the AuthData value. This is a sensitive
4088 value.

4089 **End of informative comment**

4090 1. The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE MUST have at least two (2) rows; the maximum number of
4091 table rows is TPM-vendor defined and MUST be reported in response to a
4092 TPM_GetCapability command

4093 2. The AuthData value and the PCR selection must be set by the creator of the delegation

4094 **29.5 Delegation Administration Control**

4095 **Start of informative comment**

4096 The delegate tables (both family and delegation) present some control problems. The tables
4097 must be initialized by the platform OEM, administered and controlled by the TPM Owner,
4098 and reset on changes of TPM Ownership. To provide this level of control there are three
4099 phases of administration with different functions available in the phases.

4100 The three phases of table administration are; manufacturing (P1), no-owner (P2) and owner
4101 present (P3). These three phases allow different types of administration of the delegation
4102 tables.

4103 **Manufacturing (P1)**

4104 A more accurate definition of this phase is open, un-initialized and un-owned. It occurs
4105 after TPM manufacturing and as a result of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

4106 In P1 TPM_Delegate_Manage can initialize and manage non-volatile family rows in the TPM.
4107 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation can load non-volatile delegation rows in the TPM.

4108 Attacks that attempt to burnout the TPM's NV storage are frustrated by the NV store's own
4109 limits on the number of writes when no Owner is installed.

4110 **No-Owner (P2)**

4111 This phase occurs after the platform has been properly setup. The setup can occur in the
4112 platform manufacturing flow, during the first boot of the platform or at any time when the
4113 platform owner wants to lock the table settings down. There is no TPM Owner at this time.

650

4114TPM_Delegate_Manage locks both the family and delegation rows. This lock can be opened
4115only by the Owner (after the Owner has been installed, obviously) or by the act of removing
4116the Owner (even if no Owner is installed). Thus locked tables can be unlocked by asserting
4117Physical Presence and executing TPM_ForceClear, without having to install an Owner.

4118In P2, the relevant TPM_Delegate_xxx commands all return the error
4119TPM_DELEGATE_LOCKED. This is not an issue as there is no TPM Owner to delegate
4120commands, so the inability to change the tables or create delegations does not affect the
4121use of the TPM.

4122**Owned (P3)**

4123In this phase, the TPM has a TPM Owner and the TPM Owner manages the table as the
4124Owner sees fit. This phase continues until the removal of the TPM Owner.

4125Moving from P2 to P3 is automatic upon establishment of a TPM Owner. Removal of the
4126TPM Owner automatically moves back to P1.

4127The TPM Owner always has the ability to administer any table. The TPM Owner may
4128delegate the ability to manipulate a single family or all families. Such delegations are
4129operative only if delegations are enabled.

4130**End of informative comment**

41311. When DelegateAdminLock is TRUE the TPM MUST disallow any changes to the delegate
4132 tables

41332. With a TPM Owner installed, the TPM Owner MUST authorize all delegate table changes

4134**29.5.1 Control in Phase 1**

4135**Start of informative comment**

4136The TPM starts life in P1. The TPM has no owner and the tables are empty. It is desirable
4137for the OEM to initialize the tables to allow delegation to start immediately after the Owner
4138decides to enable delegation. As the setup may require changes and validation, a simple
4139mechanism of writing to the area once is not a valid option.

4140TPM_Delegate_Manage and TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation allow the OEM to fill the
4141table, read the public parts of the table, perform reboots, reset the table and when finally
4142satisfied as to the state of the platform, lock the table.

4143Alternatively, the OEM can leave the tables NULL and turn off table administration leaving
4144the TPM in an unloaded state waiting for the eventual TPM Owner to fill the tables, as they
4145need.

4146Flow to load tables

4147Default values of DelegateAdminLock are set either during manufacturing or are the result
4148of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

4149TPM_Delegate_Manage verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and that there is no TPM
4150Owner. The command will therefore load or manipulate the family tables as specified in the
4151command.

4152TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and no TPM
4153owner is present. The command loads the delegate information specified in the command.

4154 **End of informative comment**

4155 **29.5.2 Control in Phase 2**

4156 **Start of informative comment**

4157 In phase 2, no changes are possible to the delegate tables. The platform owner must install
4158 a TPM Owner and then manage the tables, or use TPM_ForceClear to revert to phase 1.

4159 **End of informative comment**

4160 **29.5.3 Control in Phase 3**

4161 **Start of informative comment**

4162 The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE requires commands that manage the table. These commands
4163 include filling the table, turning use of the table on or off, turning administration of the
4164 table on or off, and using the table.

4165 The commands are:

4166 **TPM_Delegate_Manage** – Manages the family table on a row-by-row basis: creates a new
4167 family, enables/disables use of a family table row and delegate table rows that share the
4168 same family ID, enables/disables administration of a family's rows in both the family table
4169 and the delegate table, and invalidates an existing family.

4170 **TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation** increments the family verification count (if
4171 desired) and delegates the Owner's privilege to use a set of command ordinals, by creating a
4172 blob. Such blobs can be used as input data for TPM_DSAP or
4173 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation. Incrementing the verification count and creating a
4174 delegation must be an atomic operation. Otherwise no delegations are operative after
4175 incrementing the verification count.

4176 **TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation** loads a delegate blob into a non-volatile delegate
4177 table row, inside the TPM.

4178 **TPM_Delegate_ReadTable** is used to read from the TPM the public contents of the family
4179 and delegate tables that are stored on the TPM.

4180 **TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification** sets the verificationCount in an entity (a blob or a
4181 delegation row) to the current family value, in order that the delegations represented by that
4182 entity will continue to be accepted by the TPM.

4183 **TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation** loads a delegate blob into the TPM, and returns success
4184 or failure, depending on whether the blob is currently valid.

4185 **TPM_DSAP** – opens a deferred authorization session, using either an input blob (created by
4186 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation) or a cached blob (loaded by
4187 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation into one of the TPM's non-volatile delegation rows).

4188 **End of informative comment**

4189 **29.6 Family Verification**

4190 **Start of informative comment**

4191 The platform user may wish to have confirmation that the delegations in use provide a
4192 coherent set of delegations. This process would require some evaluation of the processes

4193granted delegations. To assist in this confirmation the TPM provides a mechanism to group
4194all delegations of a family into a signed blob. The signed blob allows the verification agent to
4195look at the delegations, the processes involved and make an assessment as the validity of
4196the delegations. The third party then sends back to the platform owner the results of the
4197assessment.

4198To perform the creation of the signed blob the platform owner needs the ability to group all
4199of the delegations of a single family into a transport session. The platform owner also wants
4200an assurance that no management of the table is possible during the verification.

4201This verification does not prove to a third party that the platform owner is not cheating.
4202There is nothing to prevent the platform owner from performing the validation and then
4203adding an additional delegation to the family.

4204Here is one example protocol that retrieves the information necessary to validate the rows
4205belonging to a particular family. Note that the local method of executing the protocol must
4206prevent a man-in-the-middle attack using the nonce supplied by the user.

4207The TPM Owner can increment the family verification count or use the current family
4208verification count. Using the current family verification count carries the risk that
4209unexamined delegation blobs permit undesirable delegations. Using an incremented
4210verification count eliminates that risk. The entity gathering the verification data requires
4211Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants access to transport session
4212commands, plus other commands depending on whether verificationCount is to be
4213incremented. This delegation could be a trusted process that can use the delegations
4214because of its PCR measurements, a remote entity that can use the delegations because the
4215Owner has sent it a TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value, or the host
4216platform booted from a CDROM that can use the delegations because of its PCR
4217measurements, and TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value submitted by the
4218Owner, for example.

4219Verification using the current verificationCount

4220The gathering entity requires access to a delegation that grants access to at least the
4221ordinals to perform a transport session, plus TPM_Delegate_ReadTable and
4222TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation.

4223The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set. This
4224ensures notification if other operations occur on the TPM during the validation process. (If
4225other operations do occur, the validation processes may have been subverted.) All
4226subsequent commands listed are performed using the transport session.

4227TPM_Delegate_ReadTable displays all public values (including the permissions and PCR
4228values) in the TPM.

4229TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation loads each cached blob, with all public values (including the
4230permissions and PCR values) in plain text.

4231After verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

4232The gathering entity sends the log of the transport session plus any supporting information
4233to the validation entity, which evaluates the signed transport session log and informs the
4234platform owner of the result of the evaluation. This could be an out-of-band process.

4235Verification using an incremented verificationCount

4236 The gathering entity requires Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants
4237 access to at least the ordinals to perform a transport session, plus
4238 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation, TPM_Delegate_ReadTable, and
4239 TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification.

4240 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set.

4241 To increment the count the TPM Owner (or a delegate) must use
4242 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation with increment == TRUE. That blob permits creation
4243 of new delegations or approval of existing tables and blobs. That delegation must set the
4244 PCRs of the desired (local) process and the desired AuthData value of the process. As noted
4245 previously, AuthData values should be a fixed value if the gathering entity is a trusted
4246 process that is part of the normal software environment.

4247 If new delegations are to be created, TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation must be used
4248 with increment == FALSE.

4249 If existing blobs and delegation rows are to be reapproved,
4250 TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification must be used to install the new value of verificationCount
4251 into those existing blobs and non-volatile rows. This exposes the blobs’ public information
4252 (including the permissions and PCR values) in plain text to the transport session.

4253 TPM_Delegate_ReadTable then exposes all public values (including the permissions and
4254 PCR values) of tables to the transport session.

4255 Again, after verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

4256 **End of informative comment**

4257 **29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM**

4258 **Start of informative comment**

4259 Use the ordinal table to determine when the various commands are available for use

4260 **End of informative comment**

4261 **29.8 Delegation Authorization Values**

4262 **Start of informative comment**

4263 This section describes why, when a PCR selection is set, the AuthData value may be a fixed
4264 value, and, when the PCR selection is null, the delegation creator must select an AuthData
4265 value.

4266 A PCR value is an indication of a particular (software) environment in the local platform.
4267 Either that PCR value indicates a trusted process or not. If the trusted process is to execute
4268 automatically, there is no point in allocating a meaningful AuthData value. (The only way
4269 the trusted process could store the AuthData value is to seal it to the process’s PCR values,
4270 but the delegation mechanism is already checking the process’s PCR values.) If execution of
4271 the trusted process is dependent upon the wishes of another entity (such as the Owner), the
4272 AuthData value should be a meaningful (private) value known only to the TPM, the Owner,
4273 and that other entity. Otherwise the AuthData value should be a fixed, well known, value.

4274 If the delegation is to be controlled from a remote platform, these simple delegation
4275 mechanisms provide no means for the platform to verify the PCRs of that remote platform,

4276and hence access to the delegation must be based solely upon knowledge of the AuthData
4277value.

4278**End of informative comment**

4279**29.8.1 Using the authorization value**

4280**Start of informative comment**

4281To use a delegation the TPM will enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
4282command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM Owner
4283authorization.

4284**PCR Selection defined**

4285In this case, the delegation has a PCR selection structure defined. Each time the TPM uses
4286the delegation authorization value instead of the TPM Owner value the TPM would validate
4287that the current PCR settings match the settings held in the delegation structure. The PCR
4288selection includes the definition of localities and checks of locality occur with the checking
4289of the PCR values. The TPM enforces use of the correct authorization value, which may or
4290may not be a meaningful (private) value.

4291**PCR selection NULL**

4292In this case, the delegation has no PCR selection structure defined. The TPM does not
4293enforce any particular environment before using the authorization value. Mere knowledge of
4294the value is sufficient.

4295**End of informative comment**

4296**29.9 DSAP description**

4297**Start of informative comment**

4298The DSAP opens a deferred auth session, using either a TPM_DELEGATE_BLOB as input
4299parameter or a reference to the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE_ROW, stored inside the TPM. The
4300DSAP command creates an ephemeral secret to authenticate a session. The purpose of this
4301section is to illustrate the delegation of user keys or TPM Owner authorization by creating
4302and using a DSAP session without regard to a specific command.

4303A key defined for a certain usage (e.g. TPM_KEY_IDENTITY) can be applied to different
4304functions within the use model (e.g. TPM_Quote or TPM_CertifyKey). If an entity knows the
4305AuthData for the key (key.usageAuth) it can perform all the functions, allowed for that use
4306model of that particular key. This entity is also defined as delegation creation entity, since it
4307can initiate the delegation process. Assume that a restricted usage entity should only be
4308allowed to execute a subset or a single functions denoted as TPM_Example, within the
4309specific use model of a key. (e.g. Allow the usage of a TPM_IDENTITY_KEY only for
4310Certifying Keys, but no other function). This use model points to the selection of the DSAP
4311as the authorization protocol to execute the TPM_Example command.

4312To perform this scenario the delegation creation entity must know the AuthData for the key
4313(key.usageAuth). It then has to initiate the delegation by creating a
4314TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB via the TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation command. As a
4315next step the delegation creation entity has to pass the TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB and
4316the delegation AuthData (TPM_DELEGATE_SENSITIVE.authValue) to the restricted usage

4317 entity. The specification offers the TPM_DelTable_ReadAuth mechanism to perform this
4318 function. Other mechanisms may be used.

4319 The restricted usage entity can now start an TPM_DSAP session by using the
4320 TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB as input.

4321 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
4322 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
4323 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

4324 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
4325 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
4326 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
4327 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
4328 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

4329 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
4330 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
4331 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
4332 generated by the system.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_DSAP	TPM_DSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP entityType entityValue	→	Decrypt sensitiveArea of entityValue If entityValue==TPM_ET_DEL_BLOB verify the integrity of the blob, and if a TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB is input verify that KeyHandle and entityValue match Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue., nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle and permissions
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Check if command ordinal of TPM_Example is allowed in permissions. If not return TPM_DISABLED_CMD Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

4335

4336 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session
4337 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same
4338 ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the
4339 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

4340 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire
4341 formats of all of the information.

4342 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
4343 output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

4344

4345 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it
4346 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the
4347 DSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

4348 **End of informative comment**

4349 1. The DSAP session MUST enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
4350 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM
4351 Owner authorization.

4352**30. Physical Presence**

4353**Start of informative comment**

4354Physical presence is a signal from the platform to the TPM that indicates the operator
4355manipulated the hardware of the platform. Manipulation would include depressing a
4356switch, setting a jumper, depressing a key on the keyboard or some other such action.

4357TCG does not specify an implementation technique. The guideline is the physical presence
4358technique should make it difficult or impossible for rogue software to assert the physical
4359presence signal.

4360A PC-specific physical presence mechanism might be an electrical connection from a switch,
4361or a program that loads during power on self-test.

4362**End of informative comment**

4363The TPM MUST support a signal from the platform for the assertion of physical presence. A
4364TCG platform specific specification MAY specify what mechanisms assert the physical
4365presence signal.

4366The platform manufacturer MUST provide for the physical presence assertion by some
4367physical mechanism.

4368**30.1 Use of Physical Presence**

4369**Start of informative comment**

4370For control purposes there are numerous commands on the TPM that require TPM Owner
4371authorization. Included in this group of commands are those that turn the TPM on or off
4372and those that define the operating modes of the TPM. The TPM Owner always has complete
4373control of the TPM. What happens in two conditions: there is no TPM Owner or the TPM
4374Owner forgets the TPM Owner AuthData value. Physical presence allows for an
4375authorization to change the state in these two conditions.

4376**No TPM Owner**

4377This state occurs when the TPM ships from manufacturing (it can occur at other times
4378also). There is no TPM Owner. It is imperative to protect the TPM from remote software
4379processes that would attempt to gain control of the TPM. To indicate to the TPM that the
4380TPM operating state can change (allow for the creation of the TPM Owner) the human
4381asserts physical presence. The physical presence assertion then indicates to the TPM that
4382changing the operating state of the TPM is authorized.

4383**Lost TPM Owner authorization**

4384In the case of lost, or forgotten, authorization there is a TPM Owner but no way to manage
4385the TPM. If the TPM will only operate with the TPM Owner authorization then the TPM is no
4386longer controllable. Here the operator of the machine asserts physical presence and
4387removes the current TPM Owner. The assumption is that the operator will then immediately
4388take ownership of the TPM and insert a new TPM Owner AuthData value.

4389**Operator disabling**

4390 Another use of physical presence is to indicate that the operator wants to disable the use of
4391 the TPM. This allows the operator to temporarily turn off the TPM but not change the
4392 permanent operating mode of the TPM as set by the TPM Owner.

4393 **End of informative comment**

4394**31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption**

4395**Start of Informative comment**

4396For asymmetric encryption schemes, the TPM is not required to perform the blocking of
4397information where that information cannot be encrypted in a single cryptographic
4398operation. The schemes TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1 and TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15
4399allow only single block encryption. When using these schemes, the caller to the TPM must
4400perform any blocking and unblocking outside the TPM. It is the responsibility of the caller
4401to ensure that multiple blocks are properly protected using a chaining mechanism.

4402Note that there are inherent dangers associated with splitting information so that it can be
4403encrypted in multiple blocks with an asymmetric key, and then chaining together these
4404blocks together. For example, if an integrity check mechanism is not used, an attacker can
4405encrypt his own data using the public key, and substitute this rogue block for one of the
4406original blocks in the message, thus forcing the TPM to replace part of the message upon
4407decryption.

4408There is also a more subtle attack to discover the data encrypted in low-entropy blocks. The
4409attacker makes a guess at the plaintext data, encrypts it, and substitutes the encrypted
4410guess for the original block. When the TPM decrypts the complete message, a successful
4411decryption will indicate that his guess was correct.

4412There are a number of solutions which could be considered for this problem – One such
4413solution for TPMs supporting symmetric encryption is specified in PKCS#7, section 10, and
4414involves using the public key to encrypt a symmetric key, then using that symmetric key to
4415encrypt the long message.

4416For TPMs without symmetric encryption capabilities, an alternative solution may be to add
4417random padding to each message block, thus increasing the block's entropy.

4418This normative was deleted, since it contradicted Part 3: “For a TPM_UNBIND command
4419where the parent key has pubKey.algorithmId equal to TPM_ALG_RSA and
4420pubKey.encScheme set to TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15 the TPM SHALL NOT expect a
4421PAYLOAD_TYPE structure to prepend the decrypted data.” The contradiction was the case
4422of a TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15 binding key, which does have a payload.

4423**End of informative comment**

44241. The TPM MUST perform the encryption or decryption in accordance with the
4425 specification of the encryption scheme, as described below.

44262. When a null terminated string is included in a calculation, the terminating null SHALL
4427 NOT be included in the calculation.

4428**31.1.1 TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1**

44291. The encryption and decryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_OAEP
4430 defined in [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding
4431 operation.

44322. Encryption

4433 a. The OAEP encoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.

4434 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to
4435 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCG 1.1 TPM's

4436 c. If there is an error with the encryption, the TPM must return the error
4437 TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.

4438.3. Decryption

4439 a. The OAEP decoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string "TCPA".

4440 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to
4441 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCG 1.1 TPM's

4442 c. If there is an error with the decryption, the TPM must return the error
4443 TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

4444 **31.1.2 TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15**

4445 1. The encryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_PKCSV15 defined in
4446 [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.2].

4447.2. Encryption

4448 a. If there is an error with the encryption, return the error TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.

4449.3. Decryption

4450 a. If there is an error with the decryption, return the error TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

4451 **31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CTR**

4452 **Start of informative comment**

4453 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
4454 at

4455 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

4456 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, or AES256. The definition
4457 for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

4458 The method of incrementing the counter value is different from that used by some standard
4459 crypto libraries (e.g. openssl, Java JCE) that increment the entire counter value. TPM
4460 users should be aware of this to avoid errors when the counter wraps.

4461 **End of informative comment**

4462 1. Given a current counter value, the next counter value is obtained by treating the lower
4463 32 bits of the current counter value as an unsigned 32-bit integer x , then replacing the
4464 lower 32 bits of the current counter value with the bits of the incremented integer $(x + 1)$
4465 mod 2^{32} . This method is described in Appendix B.1 of the NIST document ($m=32$).

4466 **31.1.4 TPM_ES_SYM_OFB**

4467 **Start of informative comment**

4468 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
4469 at

4470 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

4471The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, or AES256. The definition
4472for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

4473**End of informative comment**

4474**31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures**

4475**Start of informative comment**

4476These values indicate the approved schemes in use by the TPM to generate digital
4477signatures.

4478TPM 1.1 included only `_SHA1` keys. These allowed the `TPM_Sign` command to sign a hash
4479with no structure. This signature scheme is retained for backward compatibility.

4480TPM 1.2 added `_INFO` keys to ensure that a structure, rather than a plain hash, is always
4481signed. For `TPM_Sign`, this signature scheme signs a new `TPM_SIGN_INFO` structure.
4482Other ordinals, such as (e.g., `TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned`, `TPM_CertifyKey`, `TPM_Quote`, etc.)
4483inherently sign a structure, so the `_SHA1` and `_INFO` signature schemes produce an
4484identical result.

4485**End of informative comment**

4486The TPM MUST perform the signature or verification in accordance with the specification of
4487the signature scheme, as described below.

4488**31.2.1 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1**

4489**Start of informative comment**

4490This signature scheme prepends an OID to a SHA-1 digest. The OID, as specified in the
4491normative, is as follows:

4492PKCS#1 v2.0: 8.1 says to encode the message per PKCS#1 v2.0: 9.2.1.

4493PKCS#1 v2.0: 9.2.1 says to apply the digest and then add the algorithm ID per Section 11.

4494PKCS#1 v2.0: Section 11.2.3 for SHA-1 says

4495 `{iso(1) identified-organization(3) oiw(14) secsig(3) algorithms(2) 26 }`

4496and also

4497 For each OID, the parameters field associated with this OID in an `AlgorithmIdentifier`
4498shall have type `NULL`.

4499The DER/BER Guide says that the first sub-identifiers are coded as $40 * \text{value1} + \text{value2}$.

4500Thus, the OID becomes (with comments):

45010x30 SEQUENCE

45020x21 33 bytes

4503 0x30 SEQUENCE

4504 0x09 9 bytes

4505 0x06 OID

4506 0x05 5 bytes

4507 0x2b 43 = $40 * 1$ (iso) + 3 (identified-organization)

4508 0x0e 14 from 11.2.3

4509 0x03 3 from 11.2.3

4510 0x02 2 from 11.2.3
4511 0x1a 26 from 11.2.3
4512 0x05 NULL (parameters)
4513 0x00 0 bytes
4514 0x04 OCTET
4515 0x14 20 bytes (the SHA-1 digest to follow)

4516 **End of informative comment**

45171. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
4518 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.

4519 **31.2.2 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER**

4520 **Start of informative comment**

4521 This signature scheme is designed to permit inclusion of DER coded information before
4522 signing, which is inappropriate for most TPM capabilities

4523 **End of informative comment**

45241. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
4525 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1]. The caller must properly format the area to sign using the DER
4526 rules. The provided area maximum size is k-11 octets.

45272. TPM_Sign SHALL be the only TPM capability that is permitted to use this signature
4528 scheme. If a capability other than TPM_Sign is requested to use this signature scheme,
4529 it SHALL fail with the error code TPM_INAPPROPRIATE_SIG

4530 **31.2.3 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO**

4531 **Start of informative comment**

4532 This signature scheme is designed to permit signatures on arbitrary information but also
4533 protect the signature mechanism from being misused.

4534 **End of informative comment**

45351. The scheme MUST work just as TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1 except in the
4536 TPM_Sign command

4537 a. In the TPM_Sign command the scheme MUST use a properly constructed
4538 TPM_SIGN_INFO structure, and hash it before signing

4539 **31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes**

4540 **Start of informative comment**

4541 The TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO scheme is a new addition for 1.2. It causes a new
4542 functioning for 1.1 and 1.2 keys. The following details the use of the new scheme and how
4543 the TPM handles signatures and hashing

4544 **End of informative comment**

45451. For commands that sign a TPM_SIGN_INFO structure (e.g.,
4546 (TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned, TPM_TickStampBlob, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned)

- 713
- 4547 a. The TPM MUST create a TPM_SIGN_INFO and sign using the
4548 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1 scheme for either _SHA1 or _INFO keys.
45492. For commands that sign a structure defined by the command (e.g.,
4550 (TPM_CMK_CreateTicket, TPM_CertifyKey, TPM_CertifyKey2, TPM_MakeIdentity,
4551 TPM_Quote, TPM_Quote2, TPM_CertifySelfTest, TPM_GetCapabilitySigned)
- 4552 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and sign using the
4553 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1 scheme for either _SHA1 or _INFO keys.
45543. For TPM_Sign:
- 4555 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and key scheme
- 4556 b. If key->sigScheme is TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1, sign the 20 byte parameter
- 4557 c. If key->sigScheme is TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER, sign the DER value.
- 4558 d. If key->sigScheme is TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO, sign any value using the
4559 TPM_SIGN_INFO structure.
45604. When data is signed and the data comes from INSIDE the TPM, the TPM MUST do the
4561 hash, and prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and
4562 private key operation.
45635. When data is signed and the data comes from OUTSIDE the TPM, the software, not the
4564 TPM, MUST do the hash.
45656. When the TPM knows, or is told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the TPM
4566 MUST prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and private
4567 key operation
45687. When the TPM does not know, or told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the
4569 software, not the TPM) MUST provide the DER encoding to be prepended.
45708. The TPM MUST perform the padding and private key operation in any signing operations
4571 it does.

4572 **32. Key Usage Table**

4573 **Start of informative comment**

4574 Asymmetric keys (e.g., RSA keys) can do two basic functions: sign/verify and
4575 encrypt/decrypt.

4576 TPM_KEY_SIGNING and TPM_KEY_IDENTITY do signature functions.

4577 TPM_KEY_STORAGE, TPM_KEY_BIND, TPM_KEY_MIGRATE, and TPM_KEY_AUTHCHANGE
4578 do encryption functions.

4579 **End of informative comment**

4580 This table summarizes the types of keys associated with a given TPM command.

4581 It is the responsibility of each command to check the key usage prior to executing the
4582 command

Name	First Key	Second Key	First Key						Second Key						
			SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY	SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY	
TPM_ActivateIdentity	idKey				x										
TPM_CertifyKey	certKey	inKey	x		x			x	x	x			x	x	
TPM_CertifyKey2 (Note 3)	inKey	certKey	x	x	x		x	x	x		x				x
TPM_CertifySelfTest	key		x		x			x							
TPM_ChangeAuth	parent	blob		x					2	2	2	2	2	2	2
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish	parent	ephemeral		x									x		
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart	idKey	ephemeral			x								x		
TPM_CMK_ConvertMigration	parent			x											
TPM_CMK_CreateBlob	parent			x											
TPM_CMK_CreateKey	parent			x											
TPM_ConvertMigrationBlob	parent			x											
TPM_CreateMigrationBlob	parent	blob		x					2	2	2	2	2	2	2
TPM_CreateWrapKey	parent			x											
TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation	key		x	x	x	x	x	x							
TPM_DSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x							
TPM_EstablishTransport	key			x				x							
TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned	certKey		x		x			x							
TPM_GetAuditEventSigned	certKey		x					x							
TPM_GetCapabilitySigned	key		x		x			x							

722

TPM_GetPubKey	key		x	x	x	x	x	x						
TPM_KeyControlOwner	key		x	x	x			x	x					
TPM_LoadKey2	parent	inKey		x					x	x	x		x	x
TPM_LoadKey	parent	inKey		x					x	x	x		x	x
TPM_MigrateKey	maKey			1										
TPM_OSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x						
TPM_Quote	key		x		x								x	
TPM_Quote2	key		x		x								x	
TPM_Seal	key			x										
TPM_Sealx	key			x										
TPM_Sign	key		x										x	
TPM_UnBind	key								x	x				
TPM_Unseal	parent			x										
TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned	key		x											
TPM_TickStampBlob	key		x		x								x	

4583Notes

45841 – Key is not a storage key but TPM_MIGRATE_KEY

45852 – TPM unable to determine key type

45863 – The order is correct; the reason is to support a single auth version.

4587**33. Direct Anonymous Attestation**

4588**Start of informative comment**

4589TPM_DAA_Join and TPM_DAA_Sign are highly resource intensive commands. They require
4590most of the internal TPM resources to accomplish the complete set of operations. A TPM
4591may specify that no other commands are possible during the join or sign operations. To
4592allow other operations to occur, the TPM does allow the TPM_SaveContext command to save
4593off the current join or sign operation.

4594Operations that occur during a join or sign result in the loss of the join or sign session in
4595favor of the interrupting command.

4596**End of informative comment**

45971. The TPM MUST support one concurrent TPM_DAA_Join or TPM_DAA_Sign session. The
4598 TPM MAY support additional sessions

45992. The TPM MAY invalidate a join or sign session upon the receipt of any additional
4600 command other than the join/sign or TPM_SaveContext

4601**33.1 TPM_DAA_JOIN**

4602**Start of informative comment**

4603TPM_DAA_Join creates new JOIN data. If a TPM supports only one JOIN/SIGN operation,
4604TPM_DAA_Join invalidates any previous DAA attestation information inside a TPM. The
4605JOIN phase of a DAA context requires a TPM to communicate with an issuer.
4606TPM_DAA_Join outputs data to be sent to an issuing authority and receives data from that
4607issuing authority. The operation potentially requires several seconds to complete, but is
4608done in a series of atomic stages and TPM_SaveContext/TPM_LoadContext can be used to
4609cache data off-TPM in between atomic stages.

4610The JOIN process is designed so a TPM will normally receive exactly the same DAA
4611credentials from a given issuer, no matter how many times the JOIN process is executed
4612and no matter whether the issuer changes his keys. This property is necessary because an
4613issuer must give DAA credentials to a platform after verifying that the platform has the
4614architecture of a trusted platform. Unless the issuer repeats the verification process, there
4615is no justification for giving different DAA credentials to the same platform. Even after
4616repeating the verification process, the issuer should give replacement (different) DAA
4617credentials only when it is necessary to retire the old DAA credentials. Replacement DAA
4618credentials erase the previous DAA history of the platform, at least as far as the DAA
4619credentials from that issuer are concerned. Replacement might be desirable, as when a
4620platform changes hands, for example, in order to eliminate any association via DAA between
4621the seller and the buyer. On the other hand, replacement might be undesirable, since it
4622enables a rogue to rejoin a community from which he has been barred. Replacement is done
4623by submitting a different “count” value to the TPM during a JOIN process. A platform may
4624use any value of “count” at any time, in any order, but only “counts” accepted by the issuer
4625will elicit DAA credentials from that issuer.

4626The TPM is forced to verify an issuer’s public parameters before using an issuer’s public
4627parameters. This verification provides proof that the public parameters (which include a
4628public key) were approved by an entity that knows the private key corresponding to that
4629public key; in other words that the JOIN has previously been approved by the issuer. This

731

4630verification is necessary to prevent an attack by a rogue using a genuine issuer's public
4631parameters, which could reveal the secret created by the TPM using those public
4632parameters. Verification uses a signature (provided by the issuer) over the public
4633parameters.

4634The exponent of the issuer's key is fixed at $2^{16}+1$, because this is the only size of exponent
4635that a TPM is required to support. The modulus of the issuer's public key is used to create
4636the pseudonym with which the TPM contacts the issuer. Hence, the TPM cannot produce
4637the same pseudonym for different issuers (who have different keys). The pseudonym is
4638always created using the issuer's first key, even if the issuer changes keys, in order to
4639produce the property described earlier. The issuer proves to the TPM that he has the right
4640to use that first key to create a pseudonym by creating a chain of signatures from the first
4641key to the current key, and submitting those signatures to the TPM. The method has the
4642desirable property that only signatures and the most recent private key need be retained by
4643the issuer: once the latest link in the signature chain has been created, previous private
4644keys can be discarded.

4645The use of atomic operations minimizes the contiguous time that a TPM is busy with
4646TPM_DAA_Join and hence unavailable for other commands. JOIN can therefore be done as
4647a background activity without inconveniencing a user. The use of atomic operations also
4648minimizes the peak value of TPM resources consumed by the JOIN phase.

4649The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
4650same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same JOIN process.
4651DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
4652structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific and
4653DAA_joinSession structures. Each atomic operation verifies digests to ensure use of
4654mutually consistent sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, DAA_session, and
4655DAA_joinSession data.

4656JOIN operations and data structures are designed to minimize the amount of data that
4657must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
4658consistent sets of data. Digests of public data are held in the TPM between atomic
4659operations, instead of the actual public data (if a digest is smaller than the actual data). In
4660each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any public data loaded and used in
4661that operation matches the stored digest. Thus non-secret DAA_generic_X parameters
4662(loaded into the TPM only when required), are checked using digests DAA_digest_X
4663(preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings).

4664JOIN includes a challenge from the issuer, in order to defeat simple Denial of Service
4665attacks on the issuer's server by rogues pretending to be arbitrary TPMs.

4666A first group of atomic operations generate all TPM-data that must be sent to the issuer.
4667The platform performs other operations (that do not need to be trusted) using the TPM-data,
4668and sends the resultant data to the issuer. The issuer sends values u2 and u3 back to the
4669TPM. A second group of atomic operations accepts this data from the issuer and completes
4670the protocol.

4671The TPM outputs encrypted forms of DAA_tpmSpecific, v0 and v1. These encrypted data are
4672later interpreted by the same TPM and not by any other entity, so any manufacturer-
4673specific wrapping can be used. It is suggested, however, that enc(DAA_tpmSpecific) or
4674enc(v0) or enc(v1) data should be created by adapting a TPM_CONTEXT_BLOB structure.

4675 After executing TPM_DAA_Join, it is prudent to perform TPM_DAA_Sign, to verify that the
4676 JOIN process completed correctly. A host platform may choose to verify JOIN by performing
4677 TPM_DAA_Sign as both the target and the verifier (or could, of course, use an external
4678 verifier).

4679 **End of informative comment**

4680 **33.2 TPM_DAA_Sign**

4681 **Start of informative comment**

4682 TPM_DAA_Sign responds to a challenge and proves the attestation held by a TPM without
4683 revealing the attestation held by that TPM. The operation is done in a series of atomic
4684 stages to minimize the contiguous time that a TPM is busy and hence unavailable for other
4685 commands. TPM_SaveContext can be used to save a DAA context in between atomic stages.
4686 This enables the response to the challenge to be done as a background activity without
4687 inconveniencing a user, and also minimizes the peak value of TPM resources consumed by
4688 the process.

4689 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
4690 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same SIGN process.
4691 DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
4692 structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific structure.
4693 Each atomic operation verifies these digests and hence ensures use of mutually consistent
4694 sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, and DAA_session data.

4695 SIGN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that
4696 must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
4697 consistent sets of data. Digests of public and private data are held in the TPM between
4698 atomic operations, instead of the actual public or private data (if a digest is smaller than the
4699 actual data). At each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any data loaded and
4700 used in that operation matches the stored digest. Thus parameters DAA_digest_X are
4701 digests (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings) of non-secret
4702 DAA_generic_X parameters (loaded into the TPM only when required), for example.

4703 The design enables the use of any number of issuer DAA-data, private DAA-data, and so on.
4704 Strictly, the design is that the *TPM* puts no limit on the number of sets of issuer DAA-data
4705 or sets of private DAA-data, or restricts what set is in the TPM at any time, but supports
4706 only one DAA-context in the TPM at any instant. Any number of DAA-contexts can, of
4707 course, be swapped in and out of the TPM using TPM_SaveContext/TPM_LoadContext, so
4708 applications do not perceive a limit on the number of DAA contexts.

4709 TPM_DAA_Sign accepts a freshness challenge from the verifier and generates all TPM-data
4710 that must be sent to the verifier. The platform performs other operations (that do not need
4711 to be trusted) using the TPM-data, and sends the resultant data to the verifier. At one stage,
4712 the TPM incorporates a loaded public (non-migratable) key into the protocol. This is
4713 intended to permit the setup of a session, for any specific purpose, including doing the
4714 same job in TPM_ActivateIdentity as the EK.

4715 **End of informative comment**

4716 **33.3 DAA Command summary**

4717 **Start of informative comment**

740

4718The following is a conceptual summary of the operations that are necessary to setup a TPM
4719for DAA, execute the JOIN process, and execute the SIGN process.

4720The summary is partitioned according to the “stages” of the actual TPM commands. Thus,
4721the operations listed in JOIN under stage-2 briefly describe the operation of TPM_DAA_Join
4722at stage-2, for example.

4723This summary is in place to help in the connection between the mathematical definition of
4724DAA and this implementation in a TPM.

4725**End of informative comment**

4726**33.3.1 TPM setup**

47271. A TPM generates a TPM-specific secret S (160-bit) from the RNG and stores S in
4728 nonvolatile store on the TPM. This value will never be disclosed and changed by the
4729 TPM.

4730**33.3.2 JOIN**

4731**Start of informative comment**

4732This entire section is informative

47331. When the following is performed, this process does not increment the stage counter.

4734a. TPM imports a non-secret values n0 (2048-bit).

4735b. TPM computes a non-secret value N0 (160-bit) = H(n0).

4736c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret DAA_rekey (160-bit) = H(S, H(n0)).

4737d. TPM stores a self-consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

47382. The following is performed 0 or several times: (Note: If the stage mechanism is being
4739used, then this branch does not increment the stage counter.)

4740a. TPM imports

4741i. a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

4742ii. a non-secret value DAA_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

4743iii. a non-secret value DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

4744iv. a non-secret value SIG_DSK (2048-bit)

4745b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = H(DAA_SEED_KEY)

4746c. If DIGEST != N0, TPM refuses to continue

4747d. If DIGEST == N0, TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_DSK on
4748DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY with key (DAA_SEED_KEY, e0 (= 2¹⁶ + 1)) by using
4749TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to continue.

4750e. TPM sets N0 = H(DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY)

4751f. TPM stores a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_JOIN)

47523. Stage 2

4753a. TPM imports a set of values, including

- 4754i. a non-secret value n_0 (2048-bit),
- 4755ii. a non-secret value R_0 (2048-bit),
- 4756iii. a non-secret value R_1 (2048-bit),
- 4757iv. a non-secret value S_0 (2048-bit),
- 4758v. a non-secret value S_1 (2048-bit),
- 4759vi. a non-secret value n (2048-bit),
- 4760vii. a non-secret value n_1 (1024-bit),
- 4761viii. a non-secret value γ (2048-bit),
- 4762ix. a non-secret value q (208-bit),
- 4763x. a non-secret value COUNT (8-bit),
- 4764xi. a self consistent set of (N_0 , DAA_rekey).
- 4765xii. TPM saves them as part of a new set A.
- 4766b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(n_0)$
- 4767c. If DIGEST $\neq N_0$, TPM refuses to continue.
- 4768d. If DIGEST $== N_0$, TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(R_0, R_1, S_0, S_1, n, n_1, \Gamma, q)$
- 4769e. TPM imports a non-secret value SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit).
- 4770f. TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit) on DIGEST with key (n_0 ,
4771e0) by using TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to
4772continue.
- 4773g. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f (208-bit) = $H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 0) ||$
4774 $H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 1) \bmod q$.
- 4775h. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_0 (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2^{104}$.
- 4776i. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_1 (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.
- 4777j. TPM save f , f_0 and f_1 as part of set A.
- 47784. Stage 3
- 4779a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u_0 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4780b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u_1 (1104-bit) from the RNG.
- 4781c. TPM computes u_1 (1024-bit) = $u_1 \bmod n_1$.
- 4782d. TPM stores u_0 and u_1 as part of set A.
- 47835. Stage 4
- 4784a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{f_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of
4785set A.
- 47866. Stage 5
- 4787a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 * (R_1^{f_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of
4788set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- 47897. Stage 6

- 749
- 4790a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2 \cdot (S0^{u0}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
4791set A and erases $P2$ from set A.
47928. Stage 7
- 4793a. TPM computes a non-secret value U (2048-bit) = $P3 \cdot (S1^{u1}) \bmod n$.
- 4794b. TPM erases $P3$ from set A
- 4795c. TPM computes and saves $U1$ (160-bit) = $H(U \parallel \text{COUNT} \parallel N0)$ as part of set A.
- 4796d. TPM exports U .
47979. Stage 8
- 4798a. TPM imports ENC_NE (2048-bit).
- 4799b. TPM decrypts NE (160-bit) from ENC_NE (2048-bit) by using privEK: $NE =$
4800 $\text{decrypt}(\text{privEK}, \text{ENC_NE})$.
- 4801c. TPM computes $U2$ (160-bit) = $H(U1 \parallel \text{NE})$.
- 4802d. TPM erases $U1$ from set A.
- 4803e. TPM exports $U2$.
480410. Stage 9
- 4805a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r0$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4806b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r1$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4807c. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r2$ (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4808d. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r3$ (1264-bit) from the RNG.
- 4809e. TPM stores $r0, r1, r2, r3$ as part of set A.
- 4810f. TPM computes a non-secret value $P1$ (2048-bit) = $(R0^{r0}) \bmod n$ and stores $P1$ as part of
4811set A.
481211. Stage 10
- 4813a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P2$ (2048-bit) = $P1 \cdot (R1^{r1}) \bmod n$, stores $P2$ as part of
4814set A and erases $P1$ from set A.
481512. Stage 11
- 4816a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2 \cdot (S0^{r2}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
4817set A and erases $P2$ from set A.
481813. Stage 12
- 4819a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P4$ (2048-bit) = $P3 \cdot (S1^{r3}) \bmod n$, stores $P4$ as part of
4820set A and erases $P3$ from set A.
- 4821b. TPM exports $P4$.
482214. Stage 13
- 4823a. TPM imports w (2048-bit).
- 4824b. TPM computes $w1 = w^q \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4825c. TPM verifies if $w1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.

4826d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A .

482715. Stage 14

4828a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod \Gamma$.

4829b. TPM exports E .

483016. Stage 15

4831a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104} * r_1 \bmod q$.

4832b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod \Gamma$.

4833c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w from set A .

483417. Stage 16

4835a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).

4836b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.

4837c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$.

4838d. TPM save c as part of set A .

4839e. TPM exports NT

484018. Stage 17

4841a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_0 (352-bit) = $r_0 + c * f_0$ over the integers.

4842b. TPM exports s_0 .

484319. Stage 18

4844a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_1 (352-bit) = $r_1 + c * f_1$ over the integers.

4845b. TPM exports s_1 .

484620. Stage 19

4847a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_2 (1024-bit) = $r_2 + c * u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.

4848b. TPM exports s_2 .

484921. Stage 20

4850a. TPM computes a non-secret value s'_2 (1024-bit) = $(r_2 + c * u_0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.

4851b. TPM saves s'_2 as part of set A .

4852c. TPM exports c

485322. Stage 21

4854a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_3 (1272-bit) = $r_3 + c * u_1 + s'_2$ over the integers.

4855b. TPM exports s_3 and erases s'_2 from set A .

485623. Stage 22

4857a. TPM imports a non-secret value u_2 (1024-bit).

4858b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret v_0 (1024-bit) = $u_2 + u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.

4859c. TPM stores v_0 as part of A .

4860d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v'0$ (1024-bit) = $(u2 + u0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.

4861e. TPM saves $v'0$ as part of set A.

486224.Stage 23

4863a. TPM imports a non-secret value $u3$ (1512-bit).

4864b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v1$ (1520-bit) = $u3 + u1 + v'0$ over the integers.

4865c. TPM stores $v1$ as part of A.

4866d. TPM erases $v'0$ from set A.

486725.Stage 24

4868a. TPM makes self-consistent set of all the data ($n0$, COUNT, R0, R1, S0, S1, n , Γ , q , $v0$, $v1$), where the values $v0$, $v1$ are secret – they need to be stored safely with the consistent set, and the remaining is non-secret.

4871b. TPM erases set A.

4872**End of informative comment**

4873**33.3.3 SIGN**

4874**Start of informative comment**

4875This entire section is informative

48761. Stage 0 & 1

4877a. TPM imports and verifies a self-consistent set of all the data including:

4878i. a non-secret value $n0$ (2048-bit),

4879ii. a non-secret value COUNT (8-bit),

4880iii. a non-secret value R0 (2048-bit),

4881iv. a non-secret value R1 (2048-bit),

4882v. a non-secret value S0 (2048-bit),

4883vi. a non-secret value S1 (2048-bit),

4884vii. a non-secret value n (2048-bit),

4885viii. a non-secret value γ (2048-bit),

4886ix. a non-secret value q (208-bit),

4887x. $v0$ (1024-bit),

4888xi. $v1$ (1520-bit).

4889xii. If the verification does not succeed, TPM refuses to continue.

4890b. TPM stores the above values as part of a new set A.

4891c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f0$ (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2104$.

4892d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f1$ (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.

4893e. TPM stores $f0$ and $f1$ as part of set A.

- 4894f. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_0 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4895g. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_1 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4896h. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_2 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4897i. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_4 (1752-bit) from the RNG.
- 4898j. TPM stores r_0 , r_1 , r_2 , r_4 , as part of set A.
- 48992. Stage 2
- 4900a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{r_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of set A.
- 4901. Stage 3
- 49023. Stage 3
- 4903a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{r_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- 4904. Stage 4
- 49054. Stage 4
- 4906a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_3 (2048-bit) = $P_2 \cdot (S_0^{r_2}) \bmod n$, stores P_3 as part of set A and erases P_2 from set A.
- 4907. Stage 5
- 49085. Stage 5
- 4909a. TPM computes a non-secret value T (2048-bit) = $P_3 \cdot (S_1^{r_4}) \bmod n$.
- 4910b. TPM erases P_3 from set A.
- 4911c. TPM exports T .
- 49126. Stage 6
- 4913a. TPM imports a non-secret value w (2048-bit).
- 4914b. TPM computes $w_1 = w^q \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4915c. TPM verifies if $w_1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.
- 4916d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A.
- 49177. Stage 7
- 4918a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4919b. TPM exports E and erases f from set A.
- 49208. Stage 8
- 4921a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104} \cdot r_1 \bmod q$.
- 4922b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4923c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w and E_1 from set A.
- 49249. Stage 9
- 4925a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).
- 4926b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.
- 4927c. TPM computes a non-secret value c_2 (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$ and erases c_1 from set A.
- 4928d. TPM saves c_2 as part of set A.

4929e. TPM exports NT.

493010.Stage 10

4931a. TPM imports a non-secret value b (1-bit).

4932b. If $b = 1$, TPM imports a non-secret value m (160-bit).

4933c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || m)$ and erases c2 from set A.

4934d. If $b = 0$, TPM imports an RSA public key, eAIK ($= 2^{16} + 1$) and nAIK (2048-bit).

4935e. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || nAIK)$ and erases c2 from set A.
4936A.

4937f. TPM exports c.

493811.Stage 11

4939a. TPM computes a non-secret value s0 (352-bit) = $r0 + c*f0$ over the integers.

4940b. TPM exports s0.

494112.Stage 12

4942a. TPM computes a non-secret value s1 (352-bit) = $r1 + c*f1$ over the integers.

4943b. TPM exports s1.

494413.Stage 13

4945a. TPM computes a non-secret value s2 (1024-bit) = $r2 + c*v0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.

4946b. TPM exports s2.

494714.Stage 14

4948a. TPM computes a non-secret value s'2 (1024-bit) = $(r2 + c*v0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.

4949b. TPM saves s'2 as part of set A.

495015.Stage 15

4951a. TPM computes a non-secret value s3 (1760-bit) = $r4 + cv1 + s'2$ over the integers.

4952b. TPM exports s3 and erases s'2 from set A.

4953c. TPM erases set A.

4954**End of informative comment**

4955 **34. General Purpose IO**

4956 **Start of informative comment**

4957 The GPIO capability allows an outside entity to output a signal on a GPIO pin, or read the
4958 status of a GPIO pin. The solution is for a single pin, with no timing information. There is
4959 no support for sending information on specific busses like SMBus or RS232. The design
4960 does support the designation of more than one GPIO pin.

4961 There is no requirement as to the layout of the GPIO pin, or the routing of the wire from the
4962 GPIO pin on the platform. A platform specific specification can add those requirements.

4963 To avoid the designation of additional command ordinals, the architecture uses the NV
4964 Storage commands. A set of GPIO NV indexes map to individual GPIO pins.
4965 TPM_NV_INDEX_GPIO_00 maps to the first GPIO pin. The platform specific specification
4966 indicates the mapping of GPIO zero to a specific package pin.

4967 The TPM does not reserve any NV storage for the indicated pin; rather the TPM uses the
4968 authorization mechanisms for NV storage to allow a rich set of controls on the use of the
4969 GPIO pin. The TPM owner can specify when and how the platform can use the GPIO pin.
4970 While there is no NV storage for the pin value, TRUE or FALSE, there is NV storage for the
4971 authorization requirements for the pin.

4972 Using the NV attributes the GPIO pin may be either an input pin or an output pin.

4973 **End of informative comment**

4974 1. The TPM MAY support the use of a GPIO pin defined by the NV storage mechanisms.

4975 2. The GPIO pin MAY be either an input or an output pin.

4976 **35. Redirection**

4977 **Informative comment**

4978Redirection allows the TPM to output the results of operations to hardware other than the
4979normal TPM communication bus. The redirection can occur to areas internal or external to
4980the TPM. Redirection is only available to key operations (such as TPM_UnBind,
4981TPM_Unseal, and TPM_GetPubKey). To use redirection the key must be created specifying
4982redirection as one of the keys attributes.

4983When redirecting the output the TPM will not interpret any of the data and will pass the
4984data on without any modifications.

4985The TPM_SetRedirection command connects a destination location or port to a loaded key.
4986This connection remains so long as the key is loaded, and is saved along with other key
4987information on a saveContext(key), loadContext(key). If the key is reloaded using
4988TPM_LoadKey, then TPM_SetRedirection must be run again.

4989Any use of TPM_SetRedirection with a key that does not have the redirect attribute must
4990return an error. Use of key that has the redirect attribute without TPM_SetRedirection being
4991set must return an error.

4992 **End of informative comments**

49931. The TPM MAY support redirection

49942. If supported, the TPM MUST only use redirection on keys that have the redirect attribute
4995 set

49963. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key MUST be a leaf key in the TPM Protected Storage
4997 blob hierarchy. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key CAN NEVER be a parent key.

49984. Output data that is the result of a cryptographic operation using the private portion of a
4999 “redirect” key:

5000 a. MUST be passed to an alternate output channel

5001 b. MUST NOT be passed to the normal output channel

5002 c. MUST NOT be interpreted by the TPM

50035. When command input or output is redirected the TPM MUST respond to the command
5004 as soon as the ordinal finishes processing

5005 a. The TPM MUST indicate to any subsequent commands that the TPM is busy and
5006 unable to accept additional command until the redirection is complete

5007 b. The TPM MUST allow for the resetting of the redirection channel

50086. Redirection MUST be available for the following commands:

5009 a. TPM_Unseal

5010 b. TPM_UnBind

5011 c. TPM_GetPubKey

5012 d. TPM_Seal

5013 e. TPM_Quote

5014 **36. Structure Versioning**

5015 **Start of informative comment**

5016 In version 1.1 some structures also contained a version indicator. The TPM set the indicator
5017 to indicate the version of the TPM that was creating the structure. This was incorrect
5018 behavior. The functionality of determining the version of a structure is radically different in
5019 1.2.

5020 Most structures will contain a TPM_STRUCTURE_TAG. All future structures must contain
5021 the tag, the only structures that do not contain the tag are 1.1 structures that are not
5022 modified in 1.2. This restriction keeps backwards compatibility with 1.1.

5023 Any 1.2 structure must not contain a 1.1 tagged structure. For instance the TPM_KEY
5024 complex, if set at 1.2, must not contain a PCR_INFO structure. The TPM_KEY 1.2 structure
5025 must contain a PCR_INFO_LONG structure. The converse is also true 1.1 structures must
5026 not contain any 1.2 structures.

5027 The TPM must not allow the creation of any mixed structures. This implies that a command
5028 that deals with keys, for instance, must ensure that a complete 1.1 or 1.2 structure is
5029 properly built and validated on the creation and use of the key.

5030 The tag structure is set as a UINT16. This allows for a reasonable number of structures
5031 without wasting space in the buffers.

5032 To obtain the current TPM version the caller must use the TPM_GetCapability command.

5033 The tag is not a complete validation of the validity of a structure. The tag provides a
5034 reference for the structure and the TPM or caller is responsible for determining the validity
5035 of any remaining fields. For instance, in the TPM_KEY structure, the tag would indicate
5036 TPM_KEY but the TPM would still use tpmProof and the various digests to ensure the
5037 structure integrity.

5038 7. Compatibility and notification

5039 In 1.1 TPM_CAP_VERSION (index 19) returned a version structure with 1.1.x.x. The x.x was
5040 for manufacturer information and the x.x also was set version structures. In 1.2
5041 TPM_CAP_VERSION will return 1.1.0.0. Any 1.2 structure that uses the version information
5042 will set the x.x to 0.0 in the structure. TPM_CAP_MANUFACTURER_VER (index 21) will
5043 return 1.2.x.x. The 1.2 structures do not contain the version structure. The rationale
5044 behind this is that the structure tag will indicate the version of the structure. So changing a
5045 correct structure will result in a new tag and there is no need for a separate version
5046 structure.

5047 For further compatibility, the quote function always returns 1.1.0.0 in the version
5048 information regardless of the size of the incoming structure. All other functions may regard
5049 a 2 byte sizeofselect structure as indicative of a 1.1 structure. The TPM handles all of the
5050 structures according to the input, the only exception being TPM_CertifyKey where the TPM
5051 does not need to keep the input version of the structure.

5052 **End of informative comment**

5053 1. The TPM MUST support 1.1 and 1.2 defined structures

5054 2. The TPM MUST ensure that 1.1 and 1.2 structures are not mixed in the same overall
5055 structure

5056 a. For instance in the TPM_KEY structure if the structure is 1.1 then PCR_INFO MUST
5057 be set and if 1.2 the PCR_INFO_LONG structure must be set

50583. On input the TPM MUST ignore the lower two bytes of the version structure

50594. On output the TPM MUST set the lower two bytes to 0 of the version structure

5060 **37. Certified Migration Key Type**

5061 **Start of informative comment**

5062 In version 1.1 there were two key types, non-migration and migration keys. The TPM would
5063 only certify non-migrating keys. There is a need for a key that allows migration but allows
5064 for certification. This proposal is to create a key that allows for migration but still has
5065 properties that the TPM can certify.

5066 These new keys are “certifiable migratable keys” or CMK. This designation is to separate the
5067 keys from either the normal migration or non-migration types of keys. The TPM Owner is
5068 not required to use these keys.

5069 Two entities may participate in the CMK process. The first is the Migration-Selection
5070 Authority and the second is the Migration Authority (MA).

5071 **Migration Selection Authority (MSA)**

5072 The MSA controls the migration of the key but does not handle the migrated itself.

5073 **Migration Authority (MA)**

5074 A Migration Authority actually handles the migrated key.

5075 **Use of MSA and MA**

5076 Migration of a CMK occurs using TPM_CMK_CreateBlob (TPM_CreateMigrationBlob cannot
5077 be used). The TPM Owner authorizes the migration destination (as usual), and the key
5078 owner authorizes the migration transformation (as usual). An MSA authorizes the migration
5079 destination as well. If the MSA is the migration destination, no MSA authorization is
5080 required.

5081 **End of informative comment**

5082 **37.1 Certified Migration Requirements**

5083 **Start of informative comment**

5084 The following list details the design requirements for the controlled migration keys

5085 **Key Protections**

5086 The key must be protected by hardware and an entity trusted by the key user.

5087 **Key Certification**

5088 The TPM must provide a mechanism to provide certification of the key protections (both
5089 hardware and trusted entity)

5090 **Owner Control**

5091 The TPM Owner must control the selection of the trusted entity

5092 **Control Delegation**

5093 The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to create the keys but the decision must be explicit

5094 **Linkage**

5095 The architecture must not require linking the trusted entity and the key user

5096Key Type

5097The key may be any type of migratable key (storage or signing)

5098Interaction

5099There must be no required interaction between the trusted entity and the TPM during the
5100key creation process

5101End of informative comment**510237.2 Key Creation****5103Start of informative comment**

5104The command TPM_CMK_CreateKey creates a CMK where control of the migration is by a
5105MSA or MA. The process uses the MSA public key (actually a digest of the MA public key) as
5106input to TPM_CMK_CreateKey. The key creation process establishes a migrationAuth that is
5107SHA-1(tpmProof || SHA-1(MA pubkey) || SHA-1(source pubkey)).

5108The use of tpmProof is essential to prove that CMK creation occurs on a TPM. The use of
5109“source pubkey” explicitly links a migration AuthData value to a particular public key, to
5110simplify verification that a specific key is being migrated.

5111End of informative comment**511237.3 Migrate CMK to a MA****5113Start of informative comment**

5114Migration of a CMK to a destination other than the MSA:

5115TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation

5116The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
5117TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
5118migrationKey, the migrationScheme (which must be set to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_MIGRATE
5119or TPM_MS_RESTRICT_APPROVE) and a digest of tpmProof.

5120MA Approval

5121The MA signs a TPM_CMK_AUTH structure, which contains the digest of the MA public key,
5122the digest of the destination (or parent) public key and a digest of the public portion of the
5123key to be migrated

5124TPM Owner Authorization

5125The TPM Owner authorizes the MA approval using TPM_CMK_CreateTicket and produces a
5126signature ticket

5127Key Owner Authorization

5128The CMK owner passes the TPM Owner MA authorization, the MSA Approval and the
5129signature ticket to the TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the key owners authorization.

5130Thus the TPM owner, the key’s owner, and the MSA, all cooperate to migrate a key
5131produced by TPM_CMK_CreateBlob.

5132End of informative comment

5133 **37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA**

5134 **Start of informative comment**

5135 Migrate CMK directly to a MSA

5136 **TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

5137 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
5138 TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
5139 migrationKey (which must be the MSA public key), the migrationScheme (which must be set
5140 to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_MIGRATE) and a digest of tpmProof.

5141 **Key Owner Authorization**

5142 The CMK owner passes the TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH to the TPM in a
5143 TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the CMK owner authorization.

5144 **Double Wrap**

5145 If specified, through the MS_MIGRATE scheme, the TPM double wraps the CMK information
5146 such that the only way a recipient can unwrap the key is with the cooperation of the CMK
5147 owner.

5148 **Proof of Control**

5149 To prove to the MA and to a third party that migration of a key is under MSA control, a
5150 caller passes the MA's public key (actually its digest) to TPM_CertifyKey, to create a
5151 TPM_CERTIFY_INFO structure. This now contains a digest of the MA's public key.

5152 A CMK be produced without cooperation from the MA: the caller merely provides the MSA's
5153 public key. When the restricted key is to be migrated, the public key of the intended
5154 destination, plus the CERTIFY_INFO structure are sent to the MSA. The MSA extracts the
5155 migrationAuthority digest from the CERTIFY_INFO structure, verifies that
5156 migrationAuthority corresponds to the MSA's public key, creates and signs a
5157 TPM_RESTRICTEDKEYAUTH structure, and sends that signature back to the caller. Thus
5158 the MSA never needs to touch the actual migrated data.

5159 **End of informative comment**

5160**38. Revoke Trust**

5161**Start of informative comment**

5162There are circumstances where clearing all keys and values within the TPM is either
5163desirable or necessary. These circumstances may involve both security and privacy
5164concerns.

5165Platform trust is demonstrated using the EK Credential, Platform Credential and the
5166Conformance Credentials. There is a direct and cryptograph relationship between the EK
5167and the EK Credential and the Platform Credential. The EK and Platform credentials can
5168only demonstrate platform trust when they can be validated by the Endorsement Key.

5169This command is called revoke trust because, by deleting the EK, the EK Credential and the
5170Platform Credential are dissociated from the platform, therefore invalidating them and
5171resulting in the revocation of the trust in the platform. From a trust perspective, the
5172platform associated with these specific credentials no longer exists. However, any
5173transaction that occurred prior to invoking this command will remain valid and trusted to
5174the same extent they would be valid and trusted if the platform were physically destroyed.

5175This is a non-reversible function. Also, along with the EK, the Owner is also deleted,
5176removing all non-migratable keys and owner-specified state.

5177It is possible to establish new trust in the platform by creating a new EK using the
5178TPM_CreateRevocableEK command. Establishing trust in the platform, however, is more
5179than just creating the EK. The EK Credential and the Platform Credential must also be
5180created and associated with the new EK as described above. (The conformance credentials
5181may be obtained from the TPM and Platform manufacturer.) These credentials must be
5182created by an entity that is trusted by those entities interested in the trust of the platform.
5183This may not be a trivial task. For example, an entity willing to create these credentials my
5184want to examine the platform and require physical access during the new EK generation
5185process.

5186Besides calling one of the two EK creation functions to create the EK, the EK may be
5187"squirted" into the TPM by an external source. If this method is used, tight controls must be
5188placed on the process used to perform this function to prevent exposure or intentional
5189duplication of the EK. Since the revocation and re-creation of the EK are functions intended
5190to be performed after the TPM leaves the trusted manufacturing process, squirting of the EK
5191must be disallowed after the manufacturing process if the revoke trust command is
5192executed.

5193**End of informative comment**

51941. If TPM_CreateRevocableEK and TPM_RevokeTrust are implemented, one can do an
5195 unrestricted number of TPM_CreateRevocableEK / TPM_RevokeTrust pairs until
5196 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair is called. After TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair is
5197 called, the EK becomes irrevocable.

51982. After an EK is created the TPM MUST NOT allow a new EK to be "squirting" for the
5199 lifetime of the TPM.

52003. The EK Credential MUST provide an indication within the EK Credential as to how the
5201 EK was created. The valid permutations are:

5202 a. Squirted, non-revocable

5203 b. Squirted, revocable

5204 c. Internally generated, non-revocable

5205 d. Internally generated, revocable

52064. If the method for creating the EK during manufacturing is squirting, the EK may be
5207 either non-revocable or revocable. If it is revocable, the method must provide the
5208 insertion or extraction of the EKreset value.

5209**39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks**

5210**Start of informative comment**

5211This section lists the main functional blocks of a TPM (in arbitrary order), states whether
5212that block is mandatory or optional in the main TPM specification, and provides brief
5213justification for that choice.

5214Important notes:

52151. The default classification of a TPM function block is “mandatory”, since reclassification
5216from mandatory to optional enables the removal of a function from existing
5217implementations, while reclassification from optional to mandatory may require the addition
5218of functionality to existing implementations.

52192. Mandatory functions will be reclassified as optional functions if those functions are not
5220required in some particular type of TCG trusted platform.

52213. If a functional block is mandatory in the main specification, the functionality must be
5222present in all TCG trusted platforms.

52234. If a functional block is optional in the main specification, each individual platform-
5224specific specification must declare the status of that functionality as either (1) “mandatory-
5225specific” (the functionality must be present in all platforms of that type), or (2) “optional-
5226specific” (the functionality is optional in that type of platform), or (3) “excluded-specific” (the
5227functionality must not be present in that type of platform).

5228**End of informative comment**

5229Classification of TPM functional blocks

52301. Legacy (v1.1b) features

5231 a. Anything that was mandatory in v1.1b continues to be mandatory in v1.2. Anything
5232 that was optional in v1.1b continues to be optional in v1.2.

5233 b. V1.2 must be backwards compatible with v1.1b. All TPM features in v1.1b were
5234 discussed in depth when v1.1b was written, and anything that wasn't thought
5235 strictly necessary was tagged as "optional".

52362. Number of PCRs

5237 a. The platform specific specification controls the number of PCR on a platform. The
5238 TPM MUST implement the mandatory number of PCR specified for a particular
5239 platform

5240 i. TPMs designed to work on multiple platforms MUST provide the appropriate
5241 number of TPM for all intended platforms. I.e. if one platform requires 16 PCR
5242 and the other platform 24 the TPM would have to supply 24 PCR.

5243 b. For TPMs providing backwards compatibility with 1.1 TPM on the PC platform, there
5244 MUST be 16 static PCR.

52453. Sessions

5246 a. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 3 active sessions

5247 i. Active means currently loaded and addressable inside the TPM

- 5248 ii. Without 3 active sessions many TPM commands cannot function
- 5249 b. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent sessions
- 5250 i. The contextList of currently available session has a minimum size of 16
- 5251 ii. Providing for more concurrent sessions allows the resource manager additional
- 5252 flexibility and speed
- 52534. NVRAM
- 5254 a. There are 20 bytes mandatory of NVRAM in v1.2 as specified by the main
- 5255 specification. A platform specific specification can require a larger amount of NVRAM
- 5256 b. Cost is important. The mandatory amount of NVRAM must be as small as possible,
- 5257 because different platforms will require different amounts of NVRAM. 20 bytes are
- 5258 required for (DIR) backwards compatibility with v1.1b.
- 52595. Keys
- 5260 a. The new signing keys are mandatory in v1.2 because they plug a security hole.
- 5261 b. The TPM must support a minimum of 2 key slots.
- 52626. Direct Anonymous Attestation
- 5263 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 5264 b. Cost is important. The DAA function consumes more TPM resources than any other
- 5265 TPM function, but some platform specific specifications (some servers, for example)
- 5266 may have no need for the anonymity and pseudonymity provided by DAA.
- 52677. Transport sessions
- 5268 a. These are mandatory in v1.2.
- 5269 b. Transport sessions
- 5270 i. Enable protection of data submitted to a TPM and produced by a TPM
- 5271 ii. Enable proof of the TPM commands executed during an arbitrary session.
- 52728. Resettable Endorsement Key
- 5273 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 5274 b. Cost is important. Resettable EKs are valuable in some markets segments, but cause
- 5275 more complexity than non-resettable EKs, which are expected to be the dominant
- 5276 type of EK
- 52779. Monotonic Counter
- 5278 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- 5279 b. A monotonic counter is essential to enable software to defeat certain types of attack,
- 5280 by enabling it to determine the version (revision) of dynamic data.
- 528110. Time Ticks
- 5282 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- 5283 b. Time stamping is a function that is potentially beneficial to both a user and system
- 5284 software.

- 821
528511. Delegation (includes DSAP)
- 5286 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
 - 5287 b. Delegation enables the well-established principle of least privilege to be applied to
 - 5288 Owner authorized commands.

528912. GPIO

- 5290 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 5291 b. Cost is important. Not all types of platform will require a secure intra-platform
- 5292 method of key distribution

529313. Locality

- 5294 a. The use of locality is optional in v1.2
- 5295 b. The structures that define locality are mandatory
- 5296 c. Locality is an essential part of many (new) TPM commands, but the definition of
- 5297 locality varies widely from platform to platform, and may not be required by some
- 5298 types of platforms.
- 5299 d. It is mandatory that a platform specific specification indicate the definitions of
- 5300 locality on the platform. It is perfectly reasonable to only define one locality and
- 5301 ignore all other uses of locality on a platform

530214. TPM-audit

- 5303 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 5304 b. Proper TPM-audit requires support to reliably store logs and control access to the
- 5305 TPM, and any mechanism (an OS, for example) that could provide such support is
- 5306 potentially capable of providing an audit log without using TPM-audit. Nevertheless,
- 5307 TPM-audit might be useful to verify operation of any and all software, including an
- 5308 OS. TPM-audit is believed to be of no practical use in a client, but might be valuable
- 5309 in a server, for example.

531015. Certified Migration

- 5311 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 5312 b. Cost is important. Certified Migration enables a business model that may be
- 5313 nonsense for some platforms.

5314**40. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences**

5315**Start of informative comment**

5316All 1.2 TPM commands are completely compliant with 1.1b commands with the following
5317known exceptions.

53181. TSC_PhysicalPresence does not support configuration and usage in a single step.

53192. TPM_GetPubKey is unable to read the SRK unless TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS ->
5320readSRKPub is TRUE

53213. TPM_SetTempDeactivated now requires either physical presence or TPM Operator
5322authorization to execute

53234. TPM_OwnerClear does not modify TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> authDIR[0].

5324**End of informative comment**